## SCHEME.

1. au in l*au*d.
2. o in n*o*t.
3. ā in f*a*ther.
4. a in m*a*n.
5. ai in p*ai*n.
6. e in m*e*n.
7. ee in f*ee*l.
8. y or i in p*i*ty.
9. oa in d*oa*t.
10. oo or w in *woe*.
11. u in b*u*d.
12. auee in f*i*nd.
13. oi in f*oi*l.
14. yoo in *use*.
15. ou in n*ou*n.
16. b in *by*.
17. p in *pay*.
18. v in *vain*.
19. f in *foe*.
20. d in *due*.
21. t in *tea*.
22. dh in *thy*.
23. th in *thin*.
24. z in *zeal*.
25. s in *so*.
26. zh in fu*sion*.
27. sh in *shy*.
28. g in *go*.
29. k in *key*.
30. l in *lo*.
31. r in *ray*.
32. m in *me*.
33. n in *no*.
34. ng in so*ng*.
35. nk in i*nk*.
36. h in *ho*.

## SCHEME.

1. au in l*au*d.
2. o in n*o*t.
3. ā in f*a*ther.
4. a in m*a*n.
5. ai in p*ai*n.
6. e in m*e*n.
7. ee in f*ee*l.
8. y or i in p*i*ty.
9. oa in d*oa*t.
10. oo or w in *woe*.
11. u in b*u*d.
12. auee in f*i*nd.
13. oi in f*oi*l.
14. yoo in *use*.
15. ou in n*ou*n.
16. b in *by*.
17. p in *pay*.
18. v in *vain*.
19. f in *foe*.
20. d in *due*.
21. t in *tea*.
22. dh in *thy*.
23. th in *thin*.
24. z in *zeal*.
25. s in *so*.
26. zh in fu*sion*.
27. sh in *shy*.
28. g in *go*.
29. k in *key*.
30. l in *lo*.
31. r in *ray*.
32. m in *me*.
33. n in *no*.
34. ng in so*ng*.
35. nk in i*nk*.
36. h in *ho*.

# ELEMENTA ANGLICANA;

OR,

## THE PRINCIPLES

OF

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR

DISPLAYED AND EXEMPLIFIED,

*IN A METHOD ENTIRELY NEW.*

IN TWO VOLUMES.

---

By PETER WALKDEN FOGG.

---

*VOL.* I.

Containing a copious Collection of

## RULES, EXAMPLES, AND EXERCISES.

INTENDED FOR THE USE OF THE PUPIL.

THAT WHICH SHOULD ALWAYS BE PRACTISED, MUST AT SOME TIME BE LEARNT.——WATTS.

*STOCKPORT;*

PRINTED, FOR THE AUTHOR, BY J. CLARKE:

AND SOLD BY

T. KNOTT, NO. 47, LOMBARD-STREET, LONDON,

AND BY THE BOOKSELLERS IN TOWN AND COUNTRY.

1792.

~~Educ T 1017.92.5~~
Educ T 20757.92.7
HARVARD UNIVERSITY
GRADUATE SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
MONROE C. GUTMAN LIBRARY
1883. May 1.
Gift of
George Livermore,
of
Cambridge.

## NOTE.

*THE preface, the notes, all critical, explanatory, and apologetical remarks, and every thing not ſtrictly practical, may be found in the ſecond volume. School-maſters, and thoſe who ſtudy in private, are deſired to conſult the preface for directions reſpecting the beſt mode of uſing this ſyſtem of grammar.*

MAY 24 1916

# ELEMENTA ANGLICANA, &c.

## CHAP. I.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR is the art of ſpeaking and writing the Engliſh language with propriety, and may be divided into four parts: ORTHOGRAPHY or *Spelling*, PROSODY or *Accenting*, ETYMOLOGY or *Deriving*, SYNTAX or *Conſtructing*.

### Of ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. ORTHOGRAPHY teaches to ſpell, and by conſequence to read. *To ſpell* is to combine the proper letters in forming words: *to read* is to utter, with a juſt pronunciation, the ſounds of letters thus combined. *Letters* are the ſingle marks uſed to denote ſounds, of which our language has twenty-ſix. *Capitals* are the larger marks, A, B, C. *Small letters* are ſuch as a, b, c. The ſmall s is written both long, ſ, and ſhort, s. *Vowels* are thoſe letters which ſound of themſelves; a, e, i, o, u, w, y. The reſt are termed *conſonants*.

EXERCISES*.

(1) Meſſieurs Dawſons. (2) BRITANNIA. (3) Eſſex. (4) Cornwallis. (5) Guard your mind. (6) Paul Jones. (7) Ezra vii, 21.

(8) Vital ſpark of heavenly flame!
Quit, oh quit this mortal frame.——POPE.

* To be written by ſingle letters, and diſtinguiſhed, the capitals from the ſmall, the vowels from the conſonants.

2. A *ſyllable* is that ſound which is made by a ſingle impulſe of the voice. A ſyllable cannot be formed without a vowel, nor even with w, if no other be joined with it.

EXERCISES.

(9) Ort. (10) Mrt. (11) Jax. (12) Blrtd. (13) Rwd.
(14) As thck as hail came pſt on pſt.
(15) Bear me fr to yon drk dſ-ml plain.

3. Two vowels written together, and ſounded with one impulſe of the voice, are called a *diphthong*; three, ſo written and ſounded, a *triphthong*.

EXERCISES.

(16) Suit, ruin, create, neat, faith, laity, play, viol, quiet, brief, wail, ſteal, real. (17) Idea, food, meet, friend, beauty, view. (18) Lieu, ſhow, queen, mien, awe, ſhout, bureau, diet.

4. The letter e is often ſilent, when one or more conſonants come before *it*, and after other vowels, as in *ſide*, *bounce*: yet ſometimes it is heard, as in *recipe*, *poſſe*.

EXERCISES.

(19) Life, give, judge, duteous, incitement, hope. (20) Ode, type, celebrate, joinery, ſidelong, bridegroom, hideous, ſimile.

5. In general, a word contains as many ſyllables as vowels: So *benefited* is four ſyllables. But a ſilent e makes no ſyllable, and a diphthong or triphthong is only one: So *ground* is one ſyllable, *graceful* two, *beauiſh* two.

EXERCISES.

(21) Solitude, rude, manifold, food, lordly, nutriment, beautiful, judgement, device, gratification, review. (22) Tergiverſation, incomprehenſible, maintenance, rejoice. (23) Quaver, apotheoſis, indiviſibility.

6. As to the *place* of *diviſion* in words—Put as few letters to the former ſyllable as will give it its full ſound, provided thoſe that remain can begin a word or be dl, tl, or zl. As grat-it-ude, par-lour, rid-dle.

EXERCISES.

(24) Duty, melancholy, paper, parchment, penitent. (25) Riotous, abſolute, cradle, beetle, tenement, vanity, tenet, tepid, galaxy. (26) Fragrant, gelid, genus, ſaddle, puzzle.

7. Long ſ muſt never be written at the end of words, nor after ſhort s in the ſame word.

EXERCISES.

(27) No more thy glaſy brook reflect ſ the day,
But choak'd with ſedgeſ, workſ itſ weedy way.
(28) Sunk are thy bowerſ in ſhapeleſſ ruin all,
And the long graſſ o'ertopſ the mouldering wall.

8. Only the firſt letter of a word may be a capital, unleſs the word be written entirely in capitals.

EXERCISES.

(29) ThE acQuiSitioN oF knowLedge iS oNE oF the mOST hoNourABle occu PationS of YouTH. (30) He iſ a riCH mAn whO haTH GOD fOR hiS FrIENd.

9. No letter muſt be tripled.

EXERCISES.

(31) The heathen gods are nulllities. (32) God ſeeeth all thinGS : The wicked fleeeth in vAIn.

10. A monoſyllable, or accented ſyllable at the end of a longer word, that ends with a ſingle conſonant after a ſingle vowel, will double the conſonant, before additional endings, if their firſt letters be vowels ; as *bid*, *bidding*, *biddeth*, *bidder* ;

*permit*, *permitting*, *permitted*, *permitteſt*, *permitteth*. Except *x* as *vex*, *vexing*, &c. Except alſo when the word changes its accent, as *refer*, *reference*.

EXERCISES.

(33) Siting much unfiteth us for action. (34) Dueling and beting are bad ways of deciding controverſies. (35) Wity conferrences, where all vexxing expreſſions, knoty points, and wicked ſarcaſms are avoided, are very intereſting.

11. A double conſonant can neither be written immediately before nor after another conſonant: Except double s, in derivative words, when the former part ends in it, as from *croſs*, *croſſneſs*, and when s is added to the end of words, as in *bells*. Except alſo conſonants that come before *le*, when the preceding vowel is ſhort; as *ſtraggle*, *nettle*, *whiffle*, *ſhuttle*. Except alſo when *ad*—, *af*—, *ag*—, *ap*—, *at*—, *ef*—, meet two conſonants, the former agreeing with the laſt letter of the prepoſition, as in *addreſs*, *apprentice*, *efflux*. Except alſo the words *feoffment* and *ſaffron*.

EXERCISES.

(36) Strive to be ſkillful and avoid dullneſs. (37) Who can deſcribe the bliſful enjoyment of heaven which never pals? (38) Medle not with the afffairs of others. (39) Attribute your proſſperity to the goodneſs of the Allmighty. (40) Worldlings may bluſter and barrter, but ſucceſful trade alone cannot conffer happineſs.

12. No letter is doubled next after a diphthong, unleſs its firſt letter be *u* after *q*, or *w*.

EXERCISES.

(41) Do well and foill reprooff. (42) The voice of affection is ſweetter than all muſic. (43) To quell unruly paſſion, and boilling revenge, diſplays the wiſe man.

13. *A*, *h*, *i*, *j*, *k*, *q*, *v*, *w*, *x*, *y*, are not doubled but in proper names.

EXERCISES.

(44) Behholld, coqquette, rivver, towward, fliing, cryyng.

14. No conſonants but *f*, *l*, and *s*, are doubled at the end of words, except in *add*, *butt*, (a veſſel), *buzz*, *clamm*, *dorr*, *ebb*, *egg*, *err*, *fuzz*, *huzz*, *inn*, (a public houſe), *odd*, *purr*, and *yarr*.

EXERCISES.

(45) A wiſe mann changes his mind whenn there is occaſionn forr itt. (46) Go nott overr the waterr where you cannott ſee the bottomm. (47) Do they nott err thatt deviſe evil?

15. Where no preſcribed rule or exception contradicts it, we muſt take for granted, that thoſe parts of derived or compound words, which are ſpelled like their primitives, are pronounced like them, and the contrary.

## CHAP. II.

## Of SOUNDS.

16. THE Engliſh language has thirty-ſix primitive ſounds, which are exhibited below, in a regular ſcale. The firſt fifteen are *vowels*; the remaining twenty-one are *conſonants*.——Of the vowels the firſt eleven are *ſimple*, the other four *compound*: the ſecond, fourth, ſixth, eighth, and eleventh, are *ſhort*, the reſt *long*.

17. Of the conſonants, the laſt is termed an *aſpirate*, being only an effort of the breath, like a ſigh; the ſixteenth, ſeventeenth, twentieth, twenty-firſt, twenty-eighth, and twenty-ninth, are

*mutes*, not ſounding at all without a vowel; and the other fourteen *ſemivowels*, ſounding of themſelves, but imperfectly.

18. Of the mutes, the ſeventeenth, twenty-firſt, and twenty-ninth, are termed *pure*, becauſe their ſound cannot be prolonged; the others *impure*, as theirs may be prolonged a little, though not at pleaſure like that of the long vowels and ſemivowels.—The nineteenth, twenty-third, twenty-fifth, and twenty-ſeventh, are *aſpirated ſemivowels*, ſounded only by the breath; the reſt are *vocal*, as in them the voice is heard likewiſe: Theſe are again ſubdivided into the *impure*, where the voice is combined with the breath, which are the eighteenth, twenty-ſecond, twenty-fourth, and twenty-ſixth; and into the *pure* where the breath only is uſed.

---

## A SCHEME OR SCALE OF SOUNDS*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. au in l*au*d. | 13. oi in f*oi*l. | 25. s in *ſ*o. |
| 2. o in n*o*t. | 14. yoo in *u*ſe. | 26. zh in fu*ſ*ion. |
| 3. ā in f*a*ther. | 15. ou in n*ou*n. | 27. ſh in *ſh*y. |
| 4. a in m*a*n. | 16. b in *b*y. | 28. g in *g*o. |
| 5. ai in p*ai*n. | 17. p in *p*ay. | 29. k in *k*ey. |
| 6. e in m*e*n. | 18. v in *v*ain. | 30. l in *l*o. |
| 7. ee in f*ee*l. | 19. f in *f*oe. | 31. r in *r*ay. |
| 8. y or i in p*i*ty. | 20. d in *d*ue. | 32. m in *m*e. |
| 9. oa in d*oa*t. | 21. t in *t*ea. | 33. n in *n*o. |
| 10. oo or w in *woo*. | 22. dh in *th*y. | 34. ng in ſo*ng*. |
| 11. u in b*u*d. | 23. th in *th*in. | 35. nk in i*nk*. |
| 12. auee in f*i*nd. | 24. z in *z*eal. | 36. h in *h*o. |

---

* A more particular account of theſe ſounds, their nature, formation, &c. will appear in the ſecond volume.—What relates to the practice of reading and ſpelling, ſeek in the two following chapters.

## CHAP. III.

## Of the VOWELS.

### Of A.

19. *A* HAS the *firſt* ſound before *ld*, *lk*, *ll*, *ls*, and *lt*; alſo between *w* and *r*—in words derived from *all*—and where *al* accented ends a word.

*Examples—bald, bauld; talk, tauk; call, caul; palſy, paulzy; malt, mault; war, waur; always, aulwaiz; appal, appaul.——Exceptions—ſhall, ſhal; mall, mal; pall-mall, pel-mel; altercation, alterkaiſhon; altern, altern——words compounded with alti,—as altitude, altityood; and words ending in als, as denials, denaucals; alſo cabal.*

20. It has the *third* ſound, when *r* or *th* follows it in the ſame ſyllable, unleſs *w* go before it, or ſilent *e* follow the conſonant.

*Examples—fār, fārm, pāth.—Exceptions—bath; wrath, rauth; rather; ſcath, ſkaith.*

21. It has the *fifth* ſound when it ends a ſyllable, or comes before a ſingle conſonant, *ng*, *ſt*, *th*, *gu*, or *qu*, followed by a ſilent *e*.

*Examples—parent, pairent; make, maik; range, rainj; paſte, paiſt; bathe, baidh; plague, plaig; opaque, opaik.——Exceptions where it has the firſt ſound ha, hau; bale, (to drag) haul; la, lau; water, wautur—the third, fā-ther; gape, gāp; ā-chor; Ma-homet, mā-omet; papā; pā-thos; lā-rum; ſabā-oth—the fourth, aba; ames-ace, ams ais; are, ar; bade, bad; bracelet, braſlit; have, hav; pincaſe, pincas; alſo in male— as malecontent, malcontent; which is two ſyllables in malediction, malydikshon; malefaction, malyfakſhon; alſo angelot, and derivatives from angel, ainjil; as angelic—the eighth in landſcape, landskip.*

22. It has the *ſecond* ſound after *w*, except before *r*, or where it would have the firſt or fifth by former rules.

*Examples—waſh, woſh ; ſwab, ſwob ; what, whot.—Exceptions —waſt, wag, ſwag, ſwagger, ſwam, wan, waſp, wax.*

23. It has the *fourth* ſound when it comes immediately before any conſonant in the ſame ſyllable, except in caſes mentioned in the preceding rules.

*Examples—man, maſt.—Exceptions where it has the firſt ſound, almanac, aulmanac ; avant-guard, avaunt-gard ; falchin, fayltſhun ; halberd, haulburd ; quart, kwaurt ; quatrain, kwautraueen ; ſans, ſaunz ; ſquadron, ſkwaudron—the ſecond, baſs, (a mat) bos ; halybut, holibut ; halymas, holimus ; jalap, jolop ; quality, kwolity ; quandary, kwondairy ; quarantine, kworanteen ; quarrel, kworril ; quarry, kworry ; quaſh, kwoſh ; ſquab, ſkwob ; ſquabble, ſkwobbl ; ſqualid, ſkwolid ; ſquander, ſkwondur ; ſquaſh, ſkwoſh ; ſquat, ſkwot ; tambour, tomboor ; taſſel, toſl ; yacht, yot—the third in alms, āms ; almond, āmund ; balm, bām ; calf, cāf ; calve, cāv ; calm, cām ; half, hāf ; halve, hāv ; palm, pām ; pſalm, ſām ; qualm, kwām ; ſalve, ſālv—the fifth, ancient, ainſhunt ; baſs, (a muſical term) bais ; chaffing-diſh, tshaifing diſh ; half-penny, haipenny—the ſixth, canal coal, kenil-koal ; maſtlin, meſlin ; many, meny ; ſcarce, ſkers—the eighth in maſter before a name, miſtur ; in other poſitions it is maſter.*

24. It has the *ſixth* ſound in the termination *ate* except in verbs.—So *to aſſociate*, aſſoaſhait ; *an aſſociate*, aſſoaſhet.

25. It has the *eighth* ſound in —age, as *plumage* plyoomij.—This termination is always thus ſpelt, except in *college*, *knowledge*, *cartridge*, *partridge*, *abridge*, *privilege*, *ſacrilege*.

26. It has the *eleventh* ſound in moſt other unaccented ſyllables, as *final*, faueenal ; *collar*, colur.

27. It is ſilent in *metal*, metl ; *parliament*, parliment ; *Pharaoh*, fairoa ; *diamond*, daueemund.

## Of aa, ae, ai, ao, au, aw, and ay.

28. *Aa* has the *fifth* ſound in *baa*, bai ; *haak*, haik. It is not a diphthong any-where elſe except in ſcripture names, where it has the *fifth* ſound when accented, as *Maachah*, maika ; but when not accented, the *fourth*, as *Iſaac*, aueeſak. It is divided in *Baal*, bai-al ; *Gaal*, gai-al.

29. *Ae* is put in a few words for the *ſeventh* ſound, but of late it has very properly been changed for *e*. So *Caeſar* is pronounced ceeſar, and more properly written *Ceſar*. It is divided in all derivatives from *aer*,—as *aerial*, a-eeryal ; *aerometry*, aierometry ; and in *phaeton*, fai-eton. In *acidulae*, aſidyoolai, it has the *fifth* ſound.

30. *Ai* has the *fifth* ſound (which it denotes), with the following exceptions.—

*Corſair, corſar ; plaid, plad ; plaintiff, plantif ; raillery, ralury ;—again, agen ; againſt, agenſt ; eclairciſſement, eclercizment ; maintain, mentain ; portrait, poartrit ; ſaid, ſed ; ſainfoin, ſenfoin ; ſaith, ſeth ; ſtrait, ſtret ; wainſcot, wenſkut ; waiſtcoat, weſkut ;—aiſle, aueel ;—oraiſon, oryzun ; waſſail, waſil.*

31. Before *gh* and *gn* we do not write *ai* but *ei*, except in *arraign* and *campaign*.

32. At the end of words we do not write *ai* but *ay* or *ey*, as *betray*, bytrai ; *convey*, conyai.

33. In ſcripture names, this diphthong ſounds both the *a* and *i*, as in *Shemaiah*, Shema-auee-a ; *Haggai*, haga-auee ; but when they end in *aim*, the two are parted, as *Gittaim*, gittai-im.——*So in Lais, lai-is ; Ptolemais, tolemai-is ; Gair, Laiſh, Judaic, laic, laity, Moſaic, Ptolemaic, proſaic.*

34. *Ai* has the *eighth* ſound in the termination —*ain*, when not accented, as *mountain*, mountin: Except *villain*, vilan.

35. *Ao* is a diphthong in *gaol*, dzhail.

36. *Au* has the *firſt* ſound (which it marks) with theſe exceptions—

*Fauſet, foſit; laudanum, lodanum; laurel, lorel;—uſquebaugh, uſkwebā;—aunt, ant; craunch, krantſh; draugh, draf; draught, draft; ſtaunt, ſtant; gaunt, gant; gauntlet, gantlet; haunch, hanch; haunt, hant; jaun-dice, dzhandis; jaunt, dzhant; laugh, laf; laundry, landry; ſtaunch, ſtantſh;—gauge, gaidzh;—chaumontelle, ſhoamuntel; debauchee, deboaſhee; epaulment, epoalment; hautboy, hoaboi.*

37. *Au* is not found before *l* or *r* and another conſonant following in the ſame ſyllable, except in *fault* and *vault*.

38. It is parted in names borrowed from other languages, as *Menelaus*, menelai-us.

39. *Aw* is uſed for the *firſt* ſound at the end of words, and before *b*, *d*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, when no other conſonant follows in the ſame ſyllable—but *au* is put for it in the following exceptions—

*Auburne, audacious, audible, audience, audit, aun, baubee, caul, cauliflower, faunic, fraud, gaudy, baul, laud, laudanum, maudlin, naumachy, traumatic, vaunmure; and names, as Paul, &c.*

*Aw* has the ſecond ſound in *mawmet*, momet: *awe* is au.

40. *Ay* is written for the *fifth* ſound at the end of words: But in derivative words, where the termination begins with a conſonant, it is changed into *ai*, as *daily:* yet where s only is added,—where the termination begins with a vowel,—and in compound words, it admits of no change, as in *days*, *daylight*, *ſaying*.

41. It has uniformly this ſound, except in *bayonet*, bagunet; *ſays*, ſez: *ay*, (yes) au-y: *aye*, (ever) is ai.

EXERCISES.

(48) The raice is not to the ſwift, nor yet faivour to men of ſkill. (49) Shall I faull down to the ſtock of a tree? (50) Meny dawghters hav done virtuouſly. (51) Rayſe not a faulſe report. (52) He ſed moreover I hav ſomewhot to ſai unto thee, and ſhe ſed ſai on. (53) Tom Touchy is a fellow faimous for takeing the lau of every body. (54) I never thought myſelf ſo waurm in any party's cawſe as to deſerve their money. (55) I aſked a poor man how he did: he ſed he was like a woſh-baull aulwais in decai. (56) Animals and vegetables mai aſſimilait their nouriſhment. (57) A man mai be known by his aſſociets. (58) Advantij now ſits in the room of conſcience.

(59) Nor God aLOne in the ſtill cām we find
He mounts the ſtorm and wauks upon the wind.

(60) Both kinds of metl he prepair'd
Either to give blows or to waurd.

(61) The grim captin in a ſurly tone
Cries out, Pack up, ye raſcals, and be gone.

(62) A ſaint in craipe is twice a ſaint in laun.

## Of E.

*E* has the *ſixth* ſound immediately before any conſonant in the ſame ſyllable, unleſs the conſonant be followed by a *ſilent e*.—

*So men, tents, penitence.—Exceptions—encore, onkoar; rendezvous, rondevoo;—clerk, klark; merchant, martſhant; rencounter, rancounter; ſerge, ſardzh; ſergeant, ſardzhant; wreck, rak, (frequently ſpelt wrack); yellow, yalu;—yelk, yoak;—toupet, toopee;—cleſ, klif; England, ingland; pretty, prity; yes, yis; yeſterday, yiſturdai;—her, hur.*

43. It has the *ſeventh* ſound when it ends a ſyllable, or comes before a ſingle conſonant, a *ſilent e* following.—

*So me, mee ; be, bee ; ſcene, ſeen ; Peter, peetur.—Exceptions— aphoereſis, afeeraiſis ; ere, air ; mere (a pool) mair ; tete-a-tete, tait-au-tait ; there, dhair ; where, hwair ; theſis, thaiſis ; trefoil, traifoil ;—were, wer ; the, emphatic thee ; not emphatic thi, as thi man.*

44. It has the *eighth* ſound in unaccented ſyllables—

*As believe, byleev ; cruel, crooil ; burden, burdin ; goodneſs, gudnis ; poet, poait ; employ, imploi ; enjoy, indzhoi.—Exceptions —embraſure, enlighten, ennoble, and thoſe in the two following rules.*

45. In verbs ending in *en*, and ſubſtantives in *ken*, *ven*, *xen*, or *zen*, the *e* is ſilent.

*Examples.—Bidden, bidn ; token, toakn ; heaven, hevn ; vixen, vikſn ; dozen, duzn—*

And ſubſtantives in *—men* give it the *ſixth* ſound, as *ſpecimen*, ſpeſymen ; except *women*, wimin.

46. It has the *eleventh* ſound when unaccented before *r*, as *bitter*, bitur ; and the *ſixth* immediately after *i* long, as *diet*, dauee-et.

47. It is ſilent before *d* in verbs, as *loved*, luvd ; except after *c* or *t*, as *divided*, divaueedid ; *hated*, haitid ; and ſometimes in ſolemn reading, as *The Lord thundered* (thundurid) *out of heaven.*—— But in adjectives it is ſounded, as *naked*, naikid ; *wretched*, retſhid.

48. It is ſilent at the beginning of the words *eſkalop*, ſkalop ; *eſchalot*, ſhalot.

49. It is frequently ſilent at the end of words and before *s*, [See rule 4].—But it is ſounded in

*Apoſtrophe, apoſtroafai ; cataſtrophe, kataſtroafai ; contumely, kontyoomaily ; epitome, epitoamai ; hyperbole, haueeperboalai ; poſſe, quaere, recipe, ſimile ; aloes, aloaaiz ; antipodes, antipoadaiz ; diabetes, daueeabeetis ; manes, mainaiz ; naiades, naiyadaiz ; pleiades, plaueeadaiz ; ſeries, ſpecies.*

*And in antiſtrophe, apocope, apophyge, apotome, dyaſtole, enallage, hypallage, paragoge, premunire, ſyncope, ſyndrome, ſynechdoche, ſyſtole, vertebre, aborigines, antes, aſcarides, cantharides, herpes, hyades, hydatides, kermes, pyrites, ſorites.*

*Alſo in names, as Socrates, ſokrataiz; Lyce, laueeſai: except Charles, tſharls; Quarles, kwarls; James, dzhaims; Thames, tems; Tyre, taueer: and perhaps one or two more.*

50. It is dropped when any word ending with it takes an additional ending, the firſt letter of which is a vowel: So *love, loving, loved, loveſt, loveth, lover;* but between *c* or *g* and *—able* it muſt be retained, as *chargeable;* and before *—ous* and other terminations that would not ſound theſe letters ſoft is frequently turned into *i*, as *gracious* from *grace:* It is retained too where the ſenſe would be doubtful, as in *ſingeing*, to diſtinguiſh it from *ſinging*.

## Of ea, ee, ei, eo, eu, ew, ey, and eau.

52. *Ea* has the *ſeventh* ſound when it ends a ſyllable, or is followed by a ſingle conſonant in the ſame ſyllable.

*Examples—meat, meet; ſeat, ſeet; cheap, tſheep; cheat, teat, wheat.——Exceptions—leaſh (a thong) laſh;—bear, bair; break, braik; great, grait; pear, pair; quean, kwain; ſteak, ſtaik; ſwear, ſwair; tear, tair; wear, wair; yea, yai;—bread, bred; breakfaſt, brekfaſt; cleanly, klenli; dead, ded; deaf, def; dread, dred; endeavour, indevur; head, hed; heaven, hevn; heavy, hevi; jealous, dzhelus; lead (a metal) led; leap, lep; leaven, levn; meadow, medu; meaſure, mezyur; peaſant, pezant; pheaſant, fezant; pleaſant, plezant; read (did read) red; ready, redi; ſeamſtreſs, ſemſtris; ſpread, ſpred; ſtead, ſted, (but to ſtead, ſteed); ſweat, ſwet; thread, thred; threat, thret; tread, tred; treaſure, trezyur; weapon, wepun;—wheatear, hwiteer.*

52. It has the *ſixth* ſound when followed by two or more conſonants in the ſame ſyllable.

*Examples—dealt, delt; learn, lern; realm, ſearch.—Exceptions —heark, hark; heart, hart; hearth, harth;—heath, heeth; ſheath,*

*ſheeth: and before ch and ſt, where it has the ſeventh ſound, as teach, teetſh; feaſt, feeſt; but yet breaſt is breſt, and treachery, tretſhury.*

53. It is divided in words derived from the learned languages, as *real*, reeal; *idea*, aueedeea; *Judea*, dzhoodeea; alſo when *pre*— or *re*— comes before *a*, as in *preamble*, preeambl; *reaſcend*, reeaſend; and in the word *miſcreant*, miſcry-ant. —After *g* the *e* is often ſilent, as *vengeance*, venjans.

54. *Ee* has the ſeventh ſound (which it denotes).

*Exceptions—e'er (ever) air; ne'er (never) nair;—cheerful, tſherful;—been, bin; breeches, britſhez; threepence, thripens: and words that end in ee unaccented, committee, comity; levee, trochee.*

55. It begins no word except *eel*, *e'en* for *even*, and *e'er* for *ever*; and does not come before *v* or *f* except in *beef*, *reef*, *reeve*, *ſleeve*, and *beeves*.

56. *Ei* has generally the *ſeventh* ſound, but before a *ſilent g* it has the *fifth*.

*Examples—receive, ryſeev; reign, rain; neighbour, naibur.—Exceptions—heir, air; their (emphatic) dhair; unemphatic, dher; ſkein, ſkain; veil, vail; vein, vain;—heifer, hefur; nonpareil, nonparel;—tint, tint;—heigh-ho, hauee-hoa; height, haueet; oneirocritic, onaueeroakritik; pleiads, plaueeadz; ſleight, ſlaueet.*

57. The termination —*feit* ſounds *fit*, as *forfeit*, *forfit*; *counterfeit*, *ſurfeit*.

58. *Ei* is parted at the end of ſcripture names, after *re*—, and in the words *atheiſm*, aitheeizm; *Deity*, deeity.

59. *Eo* is a diphthong in the following words only:—

*George, dzhaurdzh;—Feof, fef; Geoffrey, jefry; jeopardy, dzhepardy Leonard, lenard; leopard, lepard; Leopold, lepuld; yeoman, yeman;—people, peepl;—galleon, galoon;—feodal, fyoodal, often ſpelt feudal.*

60. *Eu* or *ew* at the end of words has the *fourteenth* ſound, as *feud*, fyood; *new*, nyoo; except *ſew*, ſoa; *ſhew*, ſhoa, very properly though not frequently ſpelt *ſhow*. Except alſo *connoiſſeur*, coaniſoor.

61. It ſhould be well noted, that where the *fourteenth* ſound is by any eſtabliſhed rule to follow the *twenty-ſixth*, *twenty-ſeventh*, or *thirty-firſt*, it is changed for the *tenth*. So *chew* is not tſhyoo, but tſhoo; *Jew*, not dzhyoo, but dzhoo; *ſhrew*, not ſhryoo, but ſhroo. So when denoted by other letters, as *chuſe*, tſhooz; *rule*, rool.

62. *Eu* is parted in words beginning with *re*— and names ending in —*eus*.

63. *Ey* does not anſwer to *ei*, but has the *fifth* ſound, as *convey*, konvai; and unaccented the *eighth*, as *alley*, ally.

*Exceptions—eyre, air; eyry, airy; key, kee; ley, lee; eye, auee; and hey, hauee.*

64. It will be uſeful to enumerate the words in which this diphthong occurs.

*Examples in which it is accented—convey, grey, obey, prey, purvey, ſurvey, they, trey, wey, whey. It is unaccented in abbey, attorney, barley, cauſey, chimney, cockney, comfrey, coney (often ſpelt cony); galley, hackney, honey, jerſey, jockey, journey, kerſey, kidney, lackey, lamprey, malmſey, medley, money, monkey, palfrey, parley, parſley, pulley, turkey, valley, volley.*

65. *Eau* is written for the *ninth* ſound in *beau*, boa; *bureau*, byooroa; *flambeau*, flamboa; *jetteau*, jetoa; *portmanteau*, poartmantoa; *rondeau*, rondoa; for the *fourteenth* in *beauty*, byooty.

EXERCISES.

(63) To rayſe fyoods and diſcords is wickid. (64) Every man ſhould keep the kee of his own breſt. (65) Maik temperance thy companion, ſo ſhall helth ſit on thy brow. (66) Could ther reliſhes bee as different thair as thay ar heer, yet thi manna in hevn will ſuit every palet. (67) Words are to convai thoughts. (68) A ſcholur is ſeldom a boa. (69) Auguſt is payntid bairing a baſkit of pairs plums and apples. (70) Peſtilent diſeeſes commonly rain in ſummur or awtumn. (71) Thi aintient Romuns buried ther ded neer thi grait roads. (72) It is to bee admird how any dyceevur can bee ſo week to foretell things neer at hand. (73) Obſoleet words mai bee laufully ryvivd. (74) Thi goſpil maiks every man my naibour. (75) Lead a nyoo life. (76) Meny ryports privaild upon thi deth of thi lait emperor Lepold. (77) Whotſoevur wee imploy in charituble uſes, during our lives, is givn awai from ourſelves: whot we bequeeth at our deth is givn from othurs only, as our neerift rylaitions. (78) Milk appeers to bee a properr diet for human bodies. (79) Vice will hav a ſad cataſtrophai. (80) Some peeple in America countid ther yeers by thi comeing of certin birds. (81) Imaginary diſeeſes bring reeal ſuffurings.

(82) Byootiful looks ar ruld by fickle minds.

(83) It appeers I am no horſe,
That I can argue and diſcourſe,
Hav but two legs and nair a tayl.

## Of I.

66. *I* has the *twelfth* ſound when it ends an accented ſyllable, or comes before a ſingle conſonant or *th* followed by a ſilent *e*; alſo before *g* ſilent, and before *nd*.

*Examples---while, hwauel; triumph, traueumf; blithe, blaueeth; ſign, ſaueen; ſigh, ſauee.-----Exceptions---capivi, capeevy; caprice, caprees; colbertine, coalburteen; conge d'elire, coandzhdeleer; gabardine, gabardeen; imbecile, imbeſeel; machine, maſheen; magazine, magazeen; marine, mareen; oblige, oableedzh; police, poalees; profile, proafeel; quarantine, kworanteen; ratafia, ratafeea; recitative, reſitateev; ---cicely, ſiſly; diffind; give, giv; hindmoſt; live, liv; livelong, livlong; vineyard, vinyard; whiteleather, hwitledhur; withe, with: words in ---ſcind, as abſcind; and derivatives from wind, waueend; as windy. Alſo final unaccented ſyllables with i before a ſingle conſonant and ſilent e, as apprentice, apprentis; puerile, pyooril, &c.*

67. It has the *ſixth* ſound before *r* not followed by *e* ſilent.

*Examples---birth, berth; circle, ſerkl; dirge, derdzh.---Exceptions of the eleventh ſound--- birch, burtſh; bird, burd; dirt, durt; fir, firſt, flirt, ſhirt, ſir, ſirup, ſpirt, ſtir, ſtirrup, third, thirſt.----But ſirrah is ſara; birt, brit; and in ir--- i has the eighth ſound.*

68. It has the *eighth* ſound before one or more conſonants not followed by ſilent *e*, except *r*, determined by the laſt rule.

*Examples---bit, pink.-----Exceptions---accipient, akſeepyunt; alliciency, aleeſhunſy; antique, anteek; braſil or brazil, brazeel; capritchio, capreetſhoa; capuchin, capuſheen; chagreen, ſhagreen; comitial, coameeſhal; diſme, deem; equilibrium, eekwyleebryum; fatigue, fateeg; harlequin, harlikeen; inſitiency, inſeeſhunſy; intrigue, intreeg; jonquille, junkeel; mandarin, mandareen; palanquin, palankeen; pique, peek;---diſhabille, diſ-habel';---child, tſhaceeld; Chriſt, kraueeſt; climb, klaueem; mild, maueeld; pint, paueent; wild, waueel.*

69. It is not written at the end of words of one ſyllable. At the end of other words, it ſeldom occurs, but has the *eighth* ſound as in *banditti*, banditty; *cadi*, caidy: only it has the *twelfth* ſound in *dentelli*, dentalauee; *lazuli*, *literati*, *villi*.

70. It is ſilent in *baſin*, baiſn; *buſineſs*, biznis; *carriage*, carridzh; *couſin*, cuzn; *devil*, devl; *evil*, eevl; *marriage*, marridzh; *medicine*, medſin; *ordinance*, ordnans; *ordinary* (for bad) ornery; *raiſin*, raizn; *Saliſbury*, ſalſbery; *ſeizin*, ſeezn; *weevil*, weevl.

## Of ia, ie, io, iou, and ieu.

71. In moſt inſtances, when *i* comes before another vowel or diphthong, it coaleſces with it, forming a ſound like *ya*, *ye*, &c. in the beginning of words. See ci, si, ti.

*Examples---enthuſiaſt, enthyooz-yaſt; various, vair-yus; &c.---- Exceptions---alliance, alaueeans; denial, denaueeal; decrial, decraueeal;*

*iacinth, aueeaſinth; derivatives from words ending in fy; and thoſe mentioned in the two following rules.*

72. *Ie* has the *ſeventh* ſound in the middle of words.

*Examples---field, feeld; ſhield, wield.---Exceptions---fierce, fers; friend, frend; gier-eagle, gereegl; pierce, pers; tierce, ters;---miſchief, miſſhif; ſieve, ſiv;---the endings of plurals of words in y, duties, dyootiz---and of ordinals of numbers in ty, as fiftieth, fiftith.---At the end of words it has the twelfth ſound; occurring in die, dauee; fie, hie, lie, pie, rie, tie, vie.*

73. It is divided in moſt words of Latin derivation, as *quiet*, kwauee-et; and proper names, as *Hiel*, hauee-el. Alſo in *brier*, braueear.

74. *Ieu* or *iew* has the *fourteenth* ſound, as *adieu*, adyoo; *view*, vyoo: Except *lieutenant*, liftenant; *monſieur*, monſeer.

## EXERCISES.

(84) God is kaueend to thi unthankful. (85) Greef is proud. (86) Vaueel man would fayn bee wauees. (87) Put on the orNament of a meek and quauee-et ſperit. (88) We ought, bifore it bee too lait, to examin our ſouls, and provaueed for futurity. (89) Thi imagination of man's hart is eevl from his youth.

(90) Wondur nott to ſee this ſoul extend
Thi bounds and sEEk ſome othurr ſelf, a frend.

(91) Silvya's laueek autumn raueep, yet maueeld as Mai,
More braueeght than noon, yet fiesh as erly dai.

(92) Who taught thi parrot human notes to trauee,
Or with a voice endued the chatturing pauee.

(93) And thi milkmayd ſingith blaueeth,
And thi mower whetts his ſcythe.

(94) Thi mann that's reſolute and juſt,
Ferm to his principles and trusT,
Nor hopes nor feers can blaueend.

(95) Thi poor wren,
Thi moſt diminutiv of burds, will faueeght,
Hur young ones in hur neſt, agenſt thi owl.

(96) Condiſhun, cercumſtance, is not the thing,
Bliſs is the ſaim in ſubject as in king.

(97) Whaueel now auee taik my laſt adyoo,
Heev thou no ſauee, nor ſhed a teer,
LeSt yet my hāf-clos'd auee may vyoo
On erth an object worth its cair.

## Of O.

75. *O* has the *ninth* ſound when it ends a ſyllable, or comes before a ſingle conſonant, *gu*, or *th*, followed by a ſilent *e*; alſo before *ld*, *lk* where l is ſilent, *ll*, *lt*; and in words of one ſyllable before *rd*, *rt*, and *rce*.

*Examples---motive, moativ; mode, moad; vogue, voag; clothe, kloadh; told, toald; folk, foak; roll, roal; colt, coalt; ford, foard; port, poart; force, foars.-----Exceptions---cord or chord, kaurd; lord, laurd; portal, paurtal; portico, paurtikoa; ſhort, ſhaurt;---doll; forehead, forid; gone, gon; loll; noll; one, won; pomegranate, pomgranet; ſhone, ſhon; ſnort; ſort:---logue is log, as in catalogue, catalog; but monologue is monoloag: alſo ---gogue is gog, as ſynagogue, ſinagog:---boſom, boozom; do, emphatic doo, unemphatic du; gold, goold; loſe, looz; move, moov; prove, proov; to, emphatic too, unemphatic tu; two, too; who, hoo; whoſe, booz:---above, abuv; come, cum; comely, cumly; done, dun; dove, duv; glove, gluv; love, luv; none, nun; pomeroyal, pumroial; ſhove, ſhuv; ſome, ſum: and o coming between w and r not followed by e ſilent has the eleventh ſound, as worm, wurm; yet worn is woarn; and ſworn, ſwoarn.*

76. It has the *ſecond* ſound before a ſingle conſonant in the ſame ſyllable, and before *ck*, *ng*, *nt*, *ſs*, or *st*.

*Examples---rob, lock, ſcoff, ſong, font, loſs, coſt.-----Exceptions---bannerol, banuroal; bonfire, boanfaueer; bongrace, boangrais; coffer, coafur; conge, coandzhee; connoiſſeur, coaniſoor; control, controal; corridor, corridoar; fanfaron, fanfaroan; groſs, groas; hoſt, hoaſt; ghoſt, goaſt; moſt, moaſt; poſt, poaſt; Job (a man's name) dzhoab; Lewis d'or, looidoar; mirador, miradoar; nonce, noans; only, oanly; paraſol, paraſoal; patrol, patroal; roche-allum, roatſhalum; ---doublon, dubloon; gamboge, gamboodzh; marmot, marmoot; ombre, oombur; poltron, poltroon; ponton, pontoon; whom, hoom;---*

*affront, afrunt*; *allonge, alundzh*; *among, amung*; *attorney, aturny*; *borough, buroa*; *brother, brudhur*; *colander, culindur*; *colour, culur*; *cony, cuny*; *covenant, cuvenant*; *cover, cuvur*; *covet, cuvit*; *covey, cuvy*; *cozen, cuzn*; *diſcomfit, diſcumfit*; *doſt, duſt*; *doth, duth*; *dozen, duzn*; *govern, guvurn*; *honey, huny*; *jonquille, dzhunkeel*; *monday, munday*; *money, muny*; *monger, mungur*; *mongrel, mungril*; *mother, mudhur*; *nombles, numblz*; *nothing, nuthing*; *onion, unyun*; *other, udhur*; *oven, uvn*; *plover, pluvur*; *pommel, pumil*; *pompion, pumpyun*; *pother, pudhur*; *ſhovel, ſhuvl*; *ſloven, ſluvn*; *ſmother, ſmudhur*; *ſon, ſun*; *ſovereign, ſuvrin*; *ſtomach, ſtumak*; *thorough, thuroa*; *tongue, tung*; *wolf, wulf*; *woman, wuman*; *won, wun*; *wonder, wundur*; *wont, wunt*;——*women, wimin.*

77. It has the *firſt* ſound before *ft*, *rb*, *rch*, *rge*, *rk*, *rm*, *rn*, *rp*, and *th* generally; and before *r* and any conſonant in moſt words of above one ſyllable.

*Examples—ſoft, ſauft*; *orb, aurb*; *torch, taurtſh*;--*gorge, gaurdzh*; *ſtork, ſtaurk*; *form, faurm*; *corn, caurn*; *corps, caurps*; *broth, brauth*; —*Exceptions—Goth*; *moth*; *wroth, roth*;—*borne, boarn*; *both, boath*; *forge, foardzh*; *porch, poartſh*; *pork, poark*; *quoth, coath*; *ſloth, ſloath*; *ſworn, ſwoarn*; *torn, toarn*; *worn, woarn*;—*doth, duth.*

78. The following words are not included in the above rules; *bomb*, bom; *comb*, coam; *forth*, foarth; *hecatomb*, hekatom; *horſe*, haurs; *monk*, munk; *month*, munth; *north*, naurth; *rhomb*, rum; *ſponk*, ſpunk; *tomb*, toom; *womb*, woom.

79. In the prepoſitions *com*—, and *con*—, *o* has the *ſecond* ſound according to rule 76.—But it has the *eleventh* in *combat*, cumbut; *combine, comedian, comfit, comfort, command, commence, commend*, (but not its derivatives) *commiſſion, commit, company, compare, compaſs, compaſſion, complexion, compliance, comrade, conjure* (to enchant) *conſtable.*

80. In the terminations —*om*, —*on*, —*or*, —*omy*, —*ony*, —*ory*, *o* has the *eleventh* ſound; and in —*on* after a conſonant is ſilent, with perhaps a few exceptions.

*Examples—bloſſom, bloſſum ; paſſion, paſhun ; factor, factur ; anatomy, anatumy ; monotony, monotuny ; oratory, oratury ; bacon, baikn ; button, butn.*

81. No words of one ſyllable end in *o* but *bo* (an exclamation) *do, fro, go, ho, lo, no, pro, ſo, to ;* the *ninth* ſound in that place being expreſſed by *oe* or *ow.*

## Of oa, oe, oi, oo, ow, and oy.

82. *Oa* has conſtantly the *ninth* ſound, except in *broad,* braud ; *groat,* graut : It begins no word but *oaf, oak, oakum, oar* (to row with), *oat, oath ;* ends none ; and is never written as a diphthong before *g.*

83. It is parted in proper names, as *Joab,* joa-ab ; and after *co*—, as *coagulate,* coa-agyoolait.

84. *Oe* is ſometimes written in Greek words for the *ſixth* or *ſeventh* ſound, but *e* is better. So *Phoebe,* feeby ; better written *Phebe ; Oeconomy* pronounced and better written *economy.* It is retained but ſilent in *pharmacopoeia,* farmacoapauee-a ; *proſopopoeia,* proaſoapoapauee-a.

85. At the end of Engliſh words it has the *ninth* ſound, as *toe,* toa. Except *canoe,* canoo ; *ſhoe,* ſhoo ;—*does,* duz.

86. *Oi* has the *thirteenth* ſound (which it denotes) as in *join, loin.*

*Exceptions—eſcargatoire, eſcargatwaur ; reſervoir, reſervwaur ; —turkoiſe, turkaiz ;—avoirdupoiſe, averdepoiz :—tortoiſe, taurtis ;— ſcrutoire, ſkrootoar :—coif, kwoif ; coit, kwoit ; poignant, pwoinant ; poitrel, pwoitril.*

87. It is parted in *doing,* dooing; *going,* goaing; *heroic,* heroaic ; *Lois,* loais ; *ſtoic,* ſtoaic : and after co—, as *coincide,* coainſaueed.

88. *Oo* has commonly the ſound which it denotes, the *tenth*.

*Examples—cool, noon, rood.—Exceptions—door, doar ; floor, floar ; rolly-pooly, roaly poaly :—blood, blud ; crooked, crukid ; flood, flud ; foot, fut ; forſook, forſuk ; forſooth, forſuth ; good, gud ; hood, hud ; look, luk ; ſhook, ſhuk ; ſoot, ſut ; ſtood, ſtud ; took, tuk ; wood, wud ; wool, wul.*

89. It is divided in names, as *Bootes*, Boa-oataiz; after *co—*, as *coordinate*, coa-aurdinet ; and in *zoology*, zoaolodzhy.

90. *Ou* has generally the *fifteenth* ſound, but the *firſt* before *ght*, and the *eleventh* in the terminations *our* and *ous*.

*Examples—loud, out, ſpout :—bought, baut ; thought, wrought :—favour, faivur ; jealous, jelus.—Exceptions—cough, cof ; trough, trof ;—courſe, coars ; court, coart ; dough, doa ; four, foar ; fourbe, foarb ; furlough, furloa ; mourn, moarn ; mould, moald ; moult, moalt ; poultice, poaltis ; poultry, poaltry ; ſhoulder, ſhoaldur ; ſmouldering, ſmoalduring ; ſoul ; ſoal ; ſource, ſoars ; though, dhoa :—accoutre, accoutur ; amour, amoor ; bittour, bittoor ; bourn, boorn ; bouſe, booz ; cartouch, cartootſh ; coupee, coopee ; croup, croop ; gouge, goodzh ; gourd, goord ; gout (taſte) goo ; group, groop ; houſing, boozing ; louis d'or, looydoar ; louver, loovur ; ouphe, oof ; ouſel, oozl ; pour, poo-ur ; ragout, ragoo ; rendezvous, rondivoo ; rouge, roozh ; route, root ; ſoup, ſoop ; ſous, ſoo ; ſurtout, ſurtoot ; tambour, tomboor ; through, throo ; toupet, toopee ; tour, toor ; tournay, toornai ; uncouth, unkooth ; wound (a hurt) woond ; you, yoo ; youth, yooth ; —adjourn, adjurn ; bourgeon, burdzhun ; rould, cud ; country, cuntry ; couple, cupl ; courage, curidzh ; courant, curant ; courteous, curtyus ; couſin, cuzn ; double, dubl ; enough, enuf ; flouriſh, fluriſh ; gournet, gurnit ; houſewife, huzwif ; journal, dzhurnal ; journey, dzhurny ; nouriſh, nuriſh ; rough, ruf ; ſcourge, ſkurdzh ; ſhould, ſhud ; ſouthern, ſudhurn ; touch, tutſh ; tough, tuf ; trouble, trubl ; would, wud ; young, yung.*

91. *Ow* has the *ninth* ſound at the beginning and end of words ; as *own*, oan ; *owe*, oa ; *throw*, throa ; *ſlow*, *ſnow*. Except in *bow* (an act of reverence) bou ; *brow*, brou ; *cow*, cou ; *how*, *mow* (a hay-chamber) *now*, *plow*, *ſow*, *vow* and *owl*.

92. It has the *fifteenth* ſound in the middle of words, as *crowd*, croud; *frown*, *power*.—Except *bowl*, boal; *rowl*, roal, properly ſpelt *roll*; *towards*, toardz. It is not written before two conſonants. Particular regard muſt here be paid to rule 15th. The place of *ow* will be determined by the 39th rule.

93. It has the *eleventh* ſound when unaccented, as *follow*, folu.

94. *Oy* differs not from *oi*, but in being written at the end of words.

## EXERCISES.

(98) If thow doo eevl, ſin laueeith at thauee doar. (99) Thi haurns of oxn and cous for thi moaſt pārt ar larger than thi bull's. (100) Joaſeph had a coat of meny culurs. (101) Thai ſai blud will hav blud. (102) Paitiently indure thi frowns of faurtune. (103) Joi is delaueet occaiſiund by preſent or future certin gud. (104) Faurtunes ar raysd by oeconomy. (105) Yoor hoas ſhud not bee ungartered, nor yoor ſhoo unbuckled. (106) Grait moations in naiture paſs without ſownd or noyſe. (107) Wee ar not oanly tu look at a bair actiun but thi reeſn of it. (108) If thow bee prowd prai for humility. (109) Of him, and throo him, and too him, ar awl things tu hoom bee gloary for evur. (110) Ripoarts laueek ſnoa-bauls gathur ſtill thi farthur thai roal. (111) Laueek coalts and unmanijed horſis, wee ſtārt at ded boans and laueefliſs blocks. (112) Violent men hav ſaught aftur my ſoal.

(113) Thy difects tu noa,
Maik uſe of evury frend and evury foa.

(114) Hiſtury cannot ſhoa
That air thi muſkit yet cud beet the boa.

(115) Spoart that wrinkld cair diraueeds,
And Laftur hoalding boath his ſaueeds,
Cum, and trip it, as yoo goa,
On thi laueet fantaſtic toa.

(116) Eloaquence thi ſoal, ſoms chārms thi ſenſe.

(117) Laidy Cinthya, miſtriſs of the ſhaid,
Goas with thi faſhionuble ouls tu bed.

(118) When with graitiſt ārt hee ſpoak,
Yoo'd think he tauk'd laueek uthur ſoak.

(119) Thi ſuns prepair,
Meeting laueek waueends broak looſe upon thi plain,
Tu proov by ārms hoos fait it wos tu rain.

(120) Wiming ār ſauft, maueeld, pitiful and flexible.

(121) Let them ſleep on, let them ſleep on,
Till this ſtaurmy naueeght bee gon,
And thi eternal morru daun.

(122) In ſuch a caiſe thi plantiff will bee hiſs'd.

(123) We'll maik our leeſures tu attend on yoors.

(124) An oald man broakn with thi ſtaurms of ſtait
Is cum tu lai his weery boans among yoo;
Giv him a little erth for charity.

(125) His cairful muthur heard thi plaintiv ſound.

(126) Did not this faitul waur affrunt thy coaſt?

(127) Thi paitryot vertues that diſtend thy thaut,
Spred on thy front and in thy booſum gloa.

(128) Agen thi loanly fox roams fār abraud.

(129) Moarn, hapliſs Caledoanya, moarn
Thy baniſh'd peece, thy lorils toarn!
Thy ſuns, for valur long renoun'd,
Lauee ſlaughtur'd on ther naitiv grownd;
Thy hoſpitable roofs noa moar
Invaueet thi ſtrainger tu thi doar.

## Of U.

95. *U* has the *fourteenth* ſound when it ends a ſyllable or comes before a ſingle conſonant followed by ſilent *e*.

*So muſic, myoozik; tune, tyoon. Except allelujah, alelooya; eucumber, coucumur;—ure, unaccented yur; as poſture, poſtyur; treaſure, trezyur;—une, unaccented yun; as fortune, faurtyun.——See rule* 60.

96. It has the *eleventh* ſound before one or more conſonants ending the ſame ſyllable.

*Examples—cut, crutch.—Exceptions—bury, bery; buſy, bizy; puppet, poppit; truffle, trooſt.*

97. It is not written at the end of words; but there for the fourteenth ſound we write *ew* or *ue*; and after *a*, *e*, or *o*, we write *w*, both at the end of words, as *law*, *new*, *now*, and before a vowel, as *drawer*, *ewer*, *flower*; nor is *u* written after *w*, but *o* for it, as *worm*, *won*. But we end in *u* in *thou* and *you*.

## Of ua, ue, ui, uo, and uy.

98. When *qu* comes before any vowel or diphthong, *q* has the *twenty-ninth* ſound, *u* the *tenth* pronounced rapidly, and the following vowel or diphthong its proper ſound according to other rules. So *quake*, kwaik; *query*, kweery, &c.—When *que* ends a word, the *u* and *e* are ſilent, and the three form the *twenty-ninth* ſound. See rule 21ſt, and for exceptions the letter *q*.

99. *U* has the ſame ſound before vowels in *buoy*, bwoi; *conduit*, cundwit; *guerdon*, gwerdun; *guaiacum*, gwaiacum; *perſuade*, purſwaid; *ſuaſion*, ſwaizhun; *ſuavity*, ſwavity. It is ſilent in *mantua*, manta. See rule 102.

100. *U* between *g* and *e*, *i*, or *y*, has no other uſe but to harden the *g*: only where *i* has the twelfth ſound, *u* has the eighth. Examples—*gueſt*, geſt; *guide*, gyaueed.—*Ue* at the end of words after a conſonant that is preceded by a vowel is ſilent. See rule 21ſt, and the letter *g*. *Ague*, aigyoo; is an exception to this rule; and in *tongue*, tung; *gue* follows a conſonant.

101. *Ue* at the end of words is the *fourteenth* ſound, as *due*. dyoo: Alſo in *Tueſday*, tyooſdai. But *conſtrue* is conſtur. See rules 95, 60.

102. *Ui* has the *tenth* ſound in *bruiſe*, brooz; *bruit*, broot; *cruiſe*, crooz; *fruit*, froot; *juice*, joos; *recruit*, recroot: the *fourteenth* in *nuiſance*, nyooſans; *ſluice*, ſlyoos; *ſuit*, ſyoot: the *eighth* (or *u* ſilent) in *build*, bild; *biſcuit*, biſkit; *circuit*, ſerkit. *Suite* is ſweet.

103. In all caſes not included in rules 98, 99, 100, or 102, *ui* is parted; as *annuity*, anyooity; *ruin*, rooin.

104. *Uy* has the *thirteenth* ſound in *buy*, boi.

105. The termination ſounding *us* is always ſpelt *ous*, (ſee rule 90), except in *thus*, *gallows*, plurals of words in *ow*, before *ſs*, as *diſcuſs*, and in names, or Greek or Latin words, as *Julius*, *circus*.

EXERCISES.

(130) Wee ar unprofituble ſervunts, when wee hav dun our dyooty. (131) Tu hav an oapn eer, a kwick auee, and a nimble hand, is neceſſary for a cutpurſe. (132) Bery awl malis. (133) Auee hav bin indevuring very bizily tu rayſe a frendſhip, which the furſt breth of any illnaityurd byſtandur cud puff awai. (134) Men ſhud ſeeryuſly perſwaid themſelves that thai hav heer noa continyooing city. (135) Waurs ar ſyoots of appeel tu thi traueebyoonal of God's juſtis. (136) Thi mountins kwaik, and thi hills melt, bifoar thi Aulmaueety. (137) A wauees ſervunt ſhall hav rool oavur a ſun that cawſith ſhaim. (138) Merth and cherfulniſs ar but thi dyoo rywaurd of innoacency of laueef. (139) Men ar awlwais upun ther gard agenſt appeerunce of dyſaueen.

(140) Fountins, and yee that waurble as yee floa
Meloadyus murmurs, waurbling tyoon his prayſe.

(141) A little faueer is kwickly troddn out,
Which beeing ſuffurd rivurs cannot kwench.

(142) Thai eet, thai drink, and in comyoonyun ſweet,
Quaff immaurtality and joy.

(143) His prayſe, yee waueends, that from foar qwaurturs bloa,
Breethe ſauſt or loud.

## Of W.

106. *W* has the *tenth* ſound rapidly pronounced before all other vowels and diphthongs, they retaining their own ſound, according to other rules.

107. *W* written before *h* is ſounded after it, and the following vowel is pronounced as if immediately preceded by *w*. So *whim*, hwim or hooim; *what*, hwot.

108. It is ſilent in the following words:

*Anſwer, anſur; awkward, aukurd; boatſwain, boaſun; cockſwain, cokſun; ſwoon, ſoon; ſword, ſoard. Alſo before ho, and before r, as in whore (a lewd woman) hoar; write (to make letters with a pen) raweet.*

## Of Y.

109. *Y* at the end of words of one ſyllable, of thoſe accented on the laſt, or ending in *fy* whether accented or not, has the *twelfth* ſound: as *fly*, flauee; *deny*, denauee; *certify*, ſertifauee. But *my* emphatic is mauee; unemphatic, mi: ſo *by* emphatic bauee; unemphatic, bi.

110. At the end of other words it has the *eighth* ſound, which it denotes.

111. Before vowels and diphthongs it has the *eighth* ſound, they retaining the ſound preſcribed by other rules. This is only at the beginning of words.

112. It is never uſed before conſonants in the beginning of ſyllables: Between two conſonants it has the *eighth* ſound, only before *r* it has the *ſixth*: in both caſes the words are Greek.

*Examples—ſynod, ſinod; ſyſtem;—myriad, meryud; tyranny.—Exceptions—abyſm, abeem; collyrium, colleeryum; Elyſian, eleezyun; empyrium, empeeryum; Stygian, ſteedzhun;—hyſſop, haueeſup.*

113. When words that end in *y* take additional endings, they change it into *i*, as *try*, *trieth*, *trial*, &c. except the ending begin with *i*, as *trying*. But compound words retain the *y*, as in *ferryman*.

114. *I* is generally written in the beginning and middle of words, and *y* at the end, ſubject however to the exceptions mentioned in rules 69, 111, 112, 113.

EXERCISES.

(144) Stinking weeds and poiſnus plants hav ther yooſe. (145) Thi Chriſtyan religyon gives us a moar luvli ydeea of God than ani religyun ever did. (146) Stand yn au and ſyn not. (147) Thi ooeb of our laueef is of a mingled yārn, gud and ill tugethur. (148) Hwen a man yaunith hee cannot heer ſoa ooell. (149) Auee am a wurm and no man. (150) Thi heethns wud nevur ſuffur thair gods tu bee mockd, hooich yet wer noa gods. (151) A burd in thi hand is wurth too in thi buſh. (152) Doo noa rong. (153) A hoariſh wuman will bring a man too a maurſil of bred.

(154) Boas thi ſtrength of brauni arms imploi
Emblems of valur and of victuri.
(155) Nor gratifauee hwotair thi grait diſaueer,
Nor grudgeing giv hwot public needs rikwaueer.
(157) Kaueendniſs bi ſeecrit ſimpathi is taueed.
(156) Mai thi freed Indyuns in thair naitiv groaves
Reep thair oan froots and woo thair faible luvs.
(158) Thi hedge ſparru fed thi cuckoo ſoa long,
That it had its hed bit off bauee its oan yung.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the CONSONANTS.

### Of B.

115. *B* ALWAYS retains the *ſixteenth* ſound, which never is expreſſed by any other letter. It is ſilent in *bdellium*, delyum; *cucumber*, coucumer; *doubt*, dout; *ſubtle*, ſutl; and after *m* ending a word, as *lamb*, lam.

## Of C.

116. *C* has the *twenty-fifth* ſound before *e*, *i*, or *y*: ſo *cede*, ſeed; *cite*, ſaueet; *fancy*, fanſi. Except *Sceptic*, ſkeptik; ſometimes written more aptly to the ſound *ſkeptic*: *ſcirrhus*, ſkerus; in which the ſame change might be proper: To theſe might be added a few more technical words but that linguiſts differ reſpecting them. And *ſacrifice* is ſakryſaueez; *ſice*, ſaueez; *ſuffice*, ſufaueez.

117. *Ce* or *ci* before another vowel has the *twenty-ſeventh* ſound; as in *cetaceous*, ſetaiſhus; *gracious*, graiſhus; *deficient*, difiſhunt. They come not before *on* except in *coercion*, *conſcionable*, and *ſuſpicion*.

118. In every other poſition, except before *h*, *c* has the *twenty-ninth* ſound: ſo *can*, kan; *clan*, klan; *cow*, kou; *croſs*, kroſs; *cub*, kub; *muſic*, myoozik.

119. *C* ends no word of one ſyllable, but is ſucceeded by *e*, *h*, or *k*, as *face*, *each*, *ſtick*.

120. It is ſilent in *Czar*, zār; *indict*, indaueet; *muſcle*, muſl; *victual*, vitl.

## Of Ch.

121. The moſt uſual ſound of *ch* is compounded of the *twenty-firſt* and *twenty-ſeventh*, as in *cheeſe*, tſheez: The exceptions beſide the regular ones in the two following rules are, *chirurgeon*, ſurdzhun; *choir*, kwoir; *ſtomacher*, ſtumidzhur; *vouchſafe*, voutſaif; *winch*, wins.

122. It has the *twenty-ſeventh* ſound in the following words of French derivation:

*Capuchin*, *kapuſheen*; *chagrin*, *ſhagreen*; *chaiſe*, *ſhaiz*; *chamade*, *ſhamaid*; *chamois*, *ſhamoi*; *champaign*, *ſhampain*; *champignon*,

*ſhompinyoan* ; *chancre*, *ſhankur* ; *chandelier*, *ſhondaileer* ; *charlatan*, *ſharlatan* ; *chattelany*, *ſhatteleny* ; *chaumontelle*, *ſhoamontel* ; *chevalier*, *ſhevaleer* ; *chevaux de fris*, *ſhevoad:freez* ; *chicane*, *ſhicain* ; *chivalry*, *ſhivalry* ; *chives*, *ſhaueevz* ; *chopin*, *ſhoapeen* ; *couchee*, *cuſhee* ; *debauchee*, *deboaſhee* ; *eſcheat*, *eſheet* ; *machine*, *maſheen* ; *mareſchal*, *marſhal* ; *piſtachio*, *piſtaiſhoa* ; *quelque-choſe*, *kekſhoaz*.

123. It has the *twenty-ninth* ſound in the following words of Hebrew, Greek or Latin derivation, in which words are not enumerated where *ch* comes before *l* and *r*, nor where *arch*— comes before a vowel, nor proper names in the ſcriptures and antient hiſtory ; but in all thoſe it has the ſound juſt mentioned.

*Ache*, *aik* ; *anarch*, *anark* ; *anchor*, *ankur* ; *catechiſm*, *chameleon*, *chamomile*, *chaos*, *character*, *chart (a kind of map)*, *chaſm*, *chimera*, *choler*, *chord*, *chorus*, *chyle*, *chymic*, *diſtich*, *echo*, *epoch*, *eunuch*, *machinate*, *magna charta*, *mechanic*, *monarch*, *parochial*, *paſchal*, *patriarch*, *ſcheme*, *ſchool*, *technical*, *tetrarch*, *trochee*.

*Alſo achor*, *anachorite*, *anchorite*, *brachial*, *brachygraphy*, *bronchial*, *cachexy*, *cachination*, *chalcography*, *chalybeate*, *chambrel*, *cherſoneſe*, *chiliad*, *chiragrical*, *all in chiro*—, *chirurgic*, *cholagogues*, *chordee*, *chorion*, *chorography*, *conch*, *echinus*, *eſchar*, *ichneumon*, *ichnography*, *ichor*, *ichthyology*, *iſchury*, *lilach*, *maſtich*, *mocho*, *monachal*, *naumachy*, *ochymy*, *onycha*, *orchal*, *orchanet*, *orcheſtre*, *orichalch*, *pentateuch*, *petechial*, *ſaccharine*, *ſciomachy*, *ſeneſchal*, *ſynecdoche*, *tachygraphy*, *trichotomy*, *zechin*.

124. Between a ſingle vowel and that ſound of *ch* in rule 121ſt, *t* is always inſerted, except in *achieve*, *attach*, *bachelor*, *cochineal*, *ducheſs*, ſometimes ſpelt *dutcheſs* ; *much*, *niche*, *rich*, *ſuch*, *tach* or *tache*, *which*, and after *re*—, as *rechooſe*. But after a diphthong or conſonant *ch* immediately follows, as in *teach*, *birch*.

125. *Ch* is ſilent in *drachm*, dram ; *ſchedule*, ſedyool ; *ſchiſm*, ſizm ; *yacht*, yot.

## Of D.

126. *D* only and invariably denotes the *twentieth* ſound. It is ſilent in *groundſel*, grounſil ; *handker-*

*chief*, hankurtſhif; *handſel*, hanſil; *handſome*, hanſum; *Stadtholder*, ſtat-hoaldur; *weaſand*, weezn; *Wedneſday*, wenzdai.

## Of F.

127. *F* has always the *nineteenth* ſound, except in *of*, emphatic, ov; unemphatic, uv.

128. It is double after a ſingle ſhort vowel at the end of a word, ſingle after a diphthong or conſonant, ſingle followed by *e* after a ſingle long vowel at the end of a word. So *ſtaff*, *grief*, *pelf*, *life*.—Exceptions—*feoff*, *quaff*, *if*, and *of*.

## Of G.

129. *G* has the *twenty-eighth* ſound before *a*, *o*, *u*, *w*, and all conſonants, likewiſe when it ends a word. So *gain*, *gloſs*, *gold*, *grind*, *gun*, *dog*.

130. It has a ſound compounded of the *twentieth* and *twenty-ſixth* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, as in *gem*, dzhem; *gibbet*, dzhibit; *clergy*, klerdzhy. Except *rouge*, roozh.

131. But it has the *twenty-eighth* ſound, even before *e*, *i*, and *y*, in ſcripture names, as *Geba*, *Gilead*;—when *g* is doubled, as *ſtagger*, ſtagur: except *aggelation*, agdzhelaiſhun; *aggeneration*, agdzhenuraiſhun; *aggerate*, adzhurait; *exaggerate*, egzadzhurait; *ſuggeſt*, ſudzheſt:—It is alſo hard in

*Agen, androgynus, auger (for carpenters), begin, eager, gargil, geer, geeſe, geld, get, gewgaw, gibbe, gibber, gibberiſh, Gibbert, Gibbons, gibbous, Gibſon, giddy, gier eagle, gig, giggle, gild, Gill, gills, Gilſon, gimlet, gimp, ginglymus, gird, girl, give, giv; gives, gauceovz; gizzard, meager, miſogyny, phlogiſton, target, tiger, togeil, together.*

132. *G* has frequently a ſilent *e* after it, merely to ſoften it, that is to give it the ſound in rule 130.

So *vengeance*, vendzhans; *bridge*, bridzh. This ſound is denoted, after a ſingle ſhort vowel at the end of a monoſyllable, by *dge*, in other caſes by *ge* only. So *drudge*, *ſiege*, *college*. For *u* hardening *g* before vowels, ſee rule 100.

133. *G* is ſilent before *n* in the following words, but in the derivatives of thoſe that end in *gn* is frequently ſounded. So from *benign*, benaueen; is derived *benignity*.

*Arraign*, *arain*; *bagnio*, *banyoa*; *benign*, *benaueen*; *campaign*, *campain*; *condign*, *condaueen*; *deign* (*to vouchſafe*) *dain*; *feign* (*to pretend*) *fain*; *foreign*, *forin*; *gnarl*, *narl*; *gnaſh*, *naſh*; *gnat*, *nat*; *gnaw*, *naw*; *gnomon*, *noamon*; *gnoſtic*, *noſtik*; *impregn*, *impren*; *impugn*, *impyoon*; *indign*, *indaueen*; *intaglio*, *intalyoa*; *malign*, *malaueen*; *oppugn*, *opyoon*; *poignant*, *pwoinunt*; *propugn*, *proapyoon*; *reign* (*to rule*) *rain*; *repugn*, *repyoon*; *Seignior*, *ſeenyur*; *ſeraglio*, *ſeralyoa*; *ſign* (*a token*) *ſaueen*; *ſigniory*, *ſinyury*; *ſovereign*, *ſuvrin*; *vignette*, *vinyet*.

*The following from Sheridan, give a ſtriking proof of the irregularity of Engliſh pronunciation: Cogniſance*, *conizans*; *cognation*, *cognaiſhun*; *cogniſee*, *conizee*; *cogniſor*, *conizur*; *cognition*, *cogniſhun*; *cognitive*, *cognitiv*; *cogniſable*, *conizabl*.

134. It is ſilent before *m* in *apophthegm*, apoathem; *diaphragm*, daueeafram; *phlegm*, flem.

135. *Gue* final is found in theſe examples.

*Hague*, *plague*, *Prague*, *vague*, *rule* 21—*fatigue*, *intrigue*, *rule* 68.—*colleague*, *league*,—*apologue*, *catalogue*, *collogue*, *decalogue*, *demagogue*, *dialogue*, *diſembogue*, *eclogue*, *epilogue*, *menagogue*, *monologue*, *myſtagogue*, *pedagogue*, *prologue*, *rogue*, *ſynagogue*, *vogue*, *rule* 75—*tongue*.

## Of Gh.

136. *Gh* has the *twenty-eighth* ſound in *ghaſtly*, gaſtly; *gherkin*, gerkin; *ghittern*, giturn; *ghizzard*, gizurd; *ghoſt*, goaſt.

137. It has the *nineteenth* ſound in *draught*, draft; *laugh*, laf:—*cough*, cof; *chough*, tſhuf;

*enough*, enuf ; *hough*, huf ; *rough*, ruf ; *tough*, tuf ; *trough*, trof :—but it is ſilent in all words not enumerated in this rule or the laſt.

## Of H.

138. *H* when ſingle is the only and uniform mark of the *thirty-ſixth* ſound ; but is ſilent in *heir*, air ; *honeſt*, oniſt ; *honour*, onur ; *hoſpital*, oſpitul ; *hoſtler*, oſſlur ; *hour* (twelfth part of a day) our ; *humble*, umbl ; *humour*, yoomur.

### EXERCISES.

(159) Thi det uv ten thouſand talents in thi goſpil, beeing a lardzh ſum, mai dinoat lardzh offences. (160) Thi oanly tauɛem that a dum anymal ſpoak, it komplaynd uv hyooman crooɛlti. (161) Thi Laurd ſittith upun thi ſerkle uv thi erth. (162) A tſhurtſh is a relidzhus aſſembli. (163) Evuri won hoo livs in thi habityooal praktis uv ani noan ſin kuts himſelf of from kriſtyaniti. (164) Operaitions uv kimiſtri faul ſhort uv vaueetal foarce : Noa kimiſt kan maik milk or blud uv graſs. (165) Aul kreetyurs proceed from God. (166) Thi commun mateeryals hooitſh thi aintients maid ther ſhips ov, ooer thi waueeld aſh, thi evurgreen oak, thi beetſh, and thi aldur. (167) Hoouair is thi onur uv him that daueed on Wenſdai ? (168) Meny things hwitſh ar moaſt preſyus ar neglectid. (169) Oppoas ſizms bauee yooniti. (170) Thai naſhid upon mee with ther teeth.

(171) Hoo kan kloi thi hungɪi edzh uv appytaueet
Bauee bair imadzhinaitiun uv a feeſt ?

(172) Thi lam thauee raueeot dooms tu bleed tudai
Had hee thauee reeſn wud hee ſkip and play ?

(173) Not with ſutſh madzheſti, ſutſh boald rileef,
Thi faurm auguſt uv king or konquering tſheef,
Air ſwell'd on marble as in verſe hav ſhaueend,
In poliſh'd verſe, thi mannurs and thi maueend.

(174) In a wotſh's faueen maſheen,
Thi addid moovments hwitſh dyklair
Hou full thi moon, hou oald thi yeer,
Dyraueev thair ſekundery pour
From that hwitſh ſimpli points thi our.

(175) Pleeſe not thaueeſelf thi flatturing croud tu heer;
'Tis fuiſum ſtuf tu feed thauee itſhing eer.

(176) Oa auee hav paſt a miſuruble naueet!
Soa full uv ugli ſaueets, of gaſtli dreems,
Soa full uv diſſmul terrur wos thi taueem.

(177) Maik thi propur yoos uv eetſh extreem,
And raueet with ſyoori but correct with flem.

(178) Sum will evurmoar peep throo ther auee,
And laf laueek parrots at a bag-paueepur.

(179) Grais wos in aul hur ſteps, hevn in hur auee,
In evury dzheſtyur dignyti and luv.

## Of J.

139. *J* has uniformly a ſound like ſoft *g*, compounded of the *twentieth* and *twenty-ſixth*, as *joy*, dzhoi. Except *hallelujah* or *allelujah*, allelooya. It is never uſed at the end of a ſyllable, but either *ge* or *dge*. See rule 132. *G* having this ſound ſeems to end the ſyllable in *magic*, *logic*, &c. but more of this in another place.

## Of K.

140. *K* has always the *twenty-ninth* ſound, except in *blackguard*, blagard.—This ſound is expreſſed by *c* in the beginning of words before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, and *r*: except *kalendar*, ſpelt likewiſe *calendar*, *kali*, *kam*, *kaw*, *kayle*, and *Koran*. Except likewiſe proper names.—Before *e*, *i*, and *y*, it is denoted by *k*, except *ſceptic* and *ſcirrhus*. Rule 116.

141. At the end of words this ſound is expreſſed after conſonants and diphthongs by *k*, after ſingle ſhort vowels in monoſyllables by *ck*, after ſingle ſhort vowels in other words by *c* only, except compound words as *thornback*, words accented on the laſt ſyllable as *attack*, and proper names as *Habakkuk*: after ſingle long vowels by *ke*, except thoſe few that end in *que*.

142. *Ckle* is written in words of two ſyllables after a ſingle vowel; in longer words *cle* :—*kle* always after a conſonant, except in *ancle*, *carbuncle*, *circle*, and *uncle*.

143. *K* is ſilent before *n* in

*Knab*, *nab*; *knack*, *nak*; *knag* (*a knot in wood*), *knap* (*a lump on cloth*), *knare*, *knave*, *knead* (*to ſqueeze with the knuckles*), *knee*, *knell* (*the ſound of a bell*), *knickknack*, *knife*, *knight* (*a title of honour*), *knit*, *knob*, *knock*, *knoll*, *knop*, *knot* (*that is tied*), *know* (*to underſtand*), *knubble*, *knuckle*, *knur*, *knurle*.

## Of L.

144. *L* has always the *thirtieth* ſound, (which it denotes), except in *colonel*, curnul. At the end of words immediately after *r* or any diphthong not formed with *u* after *q* or with *w*, this ſound is denoted by *l*; after other conſonants beſide *r* and ſingle vowels ſounding long by *le*: But *a* when it has the firſt ſound requires *ll*, as do all ſingle ſhort vowels in monoſyllables, while in larger words they require a ſingle *l*.—Examples—*curl*, *ſteel*, *title*, *ſale*, *wall*, *fill*, *civil*.

145. *L* is ſilent in theſe examples:

*Alms*, *almond*, *balm*, *calf*, *calve*, *calm*, *half*, *halve*, *palm*, *pſalm*, *qualm*, *rule* 23:—*between a or o and k*, *as ſtalk*, *ſtauk*; *folk*, *foak*;—*and in chaldron*, *tſhaudrun*; *could*, *cud*; *falcon*, *faukn*; *fault*, *faut*; *fuſil*, *fyoozee*; *balm*, *baum*; *halſer*, *hauſur*; *malkin*, *maukin*; *malmſey*, *mamzy*; *ſalmon*, *ſamun*; *ſhould*, *ſhud*; *ſolder*, *ſodur*; *vault*, *vaut*; *would*, *wud*.——*In the derivatives of pſalm*, *it is moſtly ſounded*.

## Of M.

146. *M* conſtantly denotes the *thirty-ſecond* ſound, except in *accompt*, account; which yet may be ſpelled as pronounced.

## Of N.

147. *N* always denotes the *thirty-third* ſound, except before *g*, ſee the next rule. It is ſilent in *autumn*, autum; *column*, colum; *condemn*, condem; *contemn*, contem; *damn* (to curſe) dam; *kiln* (a place to dry or burn in) kil; *hymn* a divine ſong) him; *limn* (to paint) lim; *ſolemn*, ſolum. But in their derivatives it is not ſilent, except in the end, as *autumnal*.

## Of Ng.

148. *Ng* has the *thirty-fourth* ſound, as in *king*, wherever *g* would have the *twenty-eighth* by former rules; but where *g* ſhould be ſoft is *ndzh*, as *manger*, maindžhur; except *anger*, angur; *angiography*, ang-geeografy; *conger*, congur; *finger*, fingur; *linger*, lingur; *monger*, mungur.

149. It has the *thirty-fifth* ſound before *th*, as *length*, lenkth; *ſtrength*, ſtrenkth.

150. It is divided in derivatives and compounds, as *in-graft*, not *ing-raft*; *van-guard*, not *vang-ard*; this is conformable to rule 85th, by which rule *ſtranger* derived from *ſtrange* is ſtraindzhur; *longer* from *long*, long-ur, &c.

151. This ſound is changed for the *thirty-third* in the termination *ing* by many ſpeakers, and ſome grammars, *loving* pronounced lovin: It would be proper to follow them only in ſubſtantives, as *morning*, maurnin; *ſtockings*, ſtockins.

## Of Nk.

152. *Nk* has the *thirty-fifth* ſound, as in *thank*, *trinket*. It is expreſſed likewiſe by *nc*, *nq*, and *nx*, as in *ancle*, ankl; *conqueſt*, konk-wiſt; *anxious*,

ank-ſhus. In all theſe different ways, except *nx*, it is divided in derivatives and compounds, as *un-kind*, *con-cur*, *in-quire*.

## Of P.

153. *P* denotes the *ſeventeenth* ſound, except before *h*; ſee the next rule. It is ſilent in theſe examples.

*Pneumatic, nyoomatik; pneumonic, nyoomonik; pſalm, ſām; pſhaw, ſhau; pſeudo, ſhoodoa; ptiſan, tizan; Ptolemy, tolemy; raſpberry, raſbery; ſapphire, ſafir; ſempſtreſs, ſemſtris: and between m and t, where it is always written, as tempt, temt; empty, emty.*

## Of Ph.

154. *Ph* has the *nineteenth* ſound.

*Examples—Philip, filip;—epitaph, epitaf.—Exceptions—diphthong, dipthong; ſhepherd, ſhepurd; triphthong, tripthong; up-holſterer, up-hoalſterur;—nephew, nevyoo; phial, vauceal; Stephen, ſteevn:—and words compounded, as uphold, up-hoald.—It is ſilent in phthyſic, tizik; apophthlegm, apoathem.*

## Of Q.

155. *Q* is never uſed but before *u*: the ſounds and properties of *qu* may be learned from rules 21, 98. It has alſo the *twenty-ninth* ſound in final unaccented ſyllables, as *conquer*, konkur; *chequer*, tſhekur: It has the ſame ſound in the following examples.

*Banquette, banket; coquette, koaket; harlequin, harlikeen; harquebus, harkibus; paroquet, paroaket; quadrille, kaudril; quater couſins, kaitur cuznz; quay, kai; queck, kek; quelque choſe, kekſhoaz; quorum, koarum; quota, koata; quote (to cite) koat; quoth, koath; quotidian, koatidyun; quotient, koaſhent; roquelaure, rokloa.*

## Of R.

156. *R* has the *thirty-firſt* ſound. It is followed by a ſilent and uſeleſs *h* in

*Catarrh, diarrhoea, gonorrhoea, hemorrhage, hemorrhoids, myrrh, perhaps, pyrrhoniſm, rhabdomancy, rhapſody, rheniſh, rhetoric, rheum (a humour), Rhine, rhomb, Rhone, rhubarb, rhyme (the agreement of the ends of verſes), rhynoceros.*

157. It is ſilent in *roquelaure*, rokloa; *worſted*, wuſtid.

158. It is pronounced after *e*, though written before it in

*Acre, aikur; children, tſhildurn; fibre, hundred, lucre, luſtre, maſſacre, maugre, meagre, metre, mitre, nitre, orchèſtre, reconnoitre, ſabre, ſaltpetre, ſepulchre, ſpectre, theatre. It is alſo heard after e in iron, aueeurn.*

## EXERCISES.

(180) Wit is a keen inſtrooment and every won kan kut and gaſh with it; but tu kārve a byootifull imij rikwaueers ārt. (181) Thi aurdinery wai uv lerning Latin in a grammar ſkooll auee cannot inkurij. (182) Gunpoudur conſiſts uv three ingreedients, ſawltpeetur, ſmaulcoall, and brimſtoan. (183) Thi darcnis and thi laueet ar boath alaueek tu God. (184) Auee hav allwais a kyooryoſiti tu looc bac into thi ſoarſis uv things. (185) Thi oapinyuns uv uthurs hoom wee noa and thinck ooel ov ar noa ground uv aſſent. (186) Tu waurm milc poour ſperits uv naueetur, thi milc preſentli wil bee moar thik. (187) A ooit ſed, Men ſhaik ther heds as thai doo a botl, tu faueend hwethur ani thing bee in them. (188) Let thi taueetl uv a man's raueet bee cawld in kweſtyun, ar wee nut boald tu rilauee and bild upun thi jujment uv ſutſh as ar faimus for ther ſkil in thi laus? (189) Bauee pleſyur and payn auee wud bee undurſtud to meen hwotevur dilaueets or moaleſts us. (190) An uphoalſturur is won hoo furniſhis houſis. (191) Our mer is thi veri drugg noan tu thi aintients undur that naim. (192) Thi ſweet ſingur uv Iſrael ooith his ſawlturi riſoundid thi benefits uv thi Aulmaueeti Creeaitur. (193) Noa naitiuns ar koaly ailyuns and ſtraindzhurs thi won tu thi uthur.

(194) Kaptin, or curnul, or boald naueet in ārms,
Hoos tſhance on thees difencelis doars mai ſeeze,
If deed uv onur evur did thee pleeſe,
Gard them and him within protect from bārms.

(195) Awl that is within him duz condem
Itſelf forr beeing thair.

(196) Ooith boiling raidzh Atraueedais burn'd,
And foam bitween his naſhing graueendurs tſhurn'd.

(197) Thi hevn, thi ayr, thi erth and boundlis ſee,
Maik but won templ for thi Deeiti.

(198) Shee ſtraueeks thi lyoot, but if it ſound
Thretns tu hurll itt tu thi ground.

(199) Sum thauee luv'd duſt in Pairyan ſtoans enſhraueen,
Uthurs immaurtall epitafs diſaueen.

(200) Hees free from koart-komplaueeancis hee wauks
And with himſelf his beſt advaueeſur tauks.

(201) Oa hwot intereſt ſhall auee maiq
Tu ſaiv mauee laſt impaurtant ſtaiq,
Hwen thi moaſt juſt hav caws tu kwaiq.

(202) Rooms tſhil thi wintur, aigyoos blaſt thi ſpring.

## Of S.

159. *S* has the *twenty-fifth* ſound at the beginning of words and at the end of the terminations —*as*, —*is*, —*ous*, and —*us*. Except *ſugar*, ſhugar; *as*, az; *has*, haz; *was*, woz: plurals of words in *a*, as *pleas*, pleez; *commas*, commaz;—*his*, hiz; and *is*, iz.

160. It is pronounced ſo when it comes immediately before or after any of the *pure mutes*, or the *nineteenth* or *twenty-third* ſound: as in *aſk*, *liſp*, *moſt*, *ſcoffs*, *locks*, *caps*, *hats*, *baths*.

161. It has the ſame ſound when doubled, as in *meſs*, *bloſſom*. Except *deſſert*, dezert; *diſſolve*, dizolv; *poſſeſs*, puzes; *ſciſſors*, ſizurz.

162. It has the *twenty-fourth* ſound when it comes immediately before or after conſonants not ſpecified in rule 160—and after vowels not ſpecified in rule 159—as *huſband*, huzband; *beds*, bedz: *ſeriez*, ſeeryaiz; *dues*, dyooz; *cows*, couz. But

if *s* come between two letters, only one of which would give it the *twenty-fifth* ſound, it takes that ſound, as *againſt*, agenſt. And *ſe* after a conſonant has the ſame as *tenſe*, tens; alſo *s* following a conſonant belonging to this rule, yet not ending the word, is liable to a variety of exceptions, where it has its own ſound, as *abſurd*, not abzurd. *Yes* is yis.

163. When it follows a ſilent *e*, it is reckoned as if it followed the letter that comes before *e*: ſo *dates*, daits; *names*, naimz.

164. It has the *twenty-fourth* ſound between vowels, as *eaſy*, eezy; *wiſe*, waueez. But this has very many exceptions, both regular and particular. The regular are the ſubject of the four following rules: Some of the particular here follow.

*Abſtruſe, abſtroos; baſe, bais; ceaſe, ſees; conciſe, cruſade, cymoſure, doſe, douſe, gooſe, increaſe, iſicle, leaſe, looſe, louſe, but not its derivatives, mooſe, obeſe, obtuſe, preciſe, raſe, &c.*

165. It has the *twenty-fifth* ſound between vowels after inſeparable prepoſitions, as in *beſeech*, *deſiccate*, &c. but if the accent be on the following ſyllable after *de*—, or *re*—, it has the *twenty-fourth*, as *deſire*, dezaueer; yet not without exception.

166. It has the *twenty-fifth* ſound ending an inſeparable prepoſition, as *miſinform*; the *twenty-fourth* in this caſe when the following ſyllable is accented, as *diſarm*, dizarm.

167. It has alſo the *twenty-fifth* in —*oſe*, —*ſive*, —*ſome*, and —*ſory*, as *jocoſe*, *abuſive*, *noiſome*, *deluſory*.

168. In ſeveral words it has the *twenty-fourth* ſound when they are verbs, and the *twenty-fifth* when they are other parts of ſpeech: ſo *to uſe*, yooz; *a uſe*, yoos. The words are

*Cloſe, deſign, diffuſe, greaſe, houſe, (and the plural houſes is houziz), mouſe, riſe, uſe, and a few beſides.*

169. It is ſilent in

*Aiſle, aueel; abyſm, abeem; belles-lettres, bel-letr; burdelais, burdelai; Carliſle, karlaueel; demeſne, demain; diſme, deem; iſle, aueel; iſland, aueeland; Liſle, laueel; louis d'or, looidoar; provoſt, (the executioner of an army) proavoa; puiſne, pyoony; rendezvous, rondivoo; ſous, ſoo; viſcount, vaueekount.*

## Of Sc.

170. *Sc* before *e*, *i*, or *y*, has the *twenty-fifth* ſound, like *s* alone, as *ſcene*, ſeen. Except *Sceptic*, &c. rule 116; and *diſcern*, dizern. Before other letters *sc* is like *sk*, as *ſcan*, ſkan.

## Of Sh.

171. *Sh* has the *twenty-ſeventh* ſound (which it marks) except in *hous-hold*, more properly ſpelt *houſehold*; *falſ-hood*, which ſhould be *falſehood*; in other derived words, as *diſhonour*, dizonur;—and in *diſhabille*, diſ-habel. *Leaſh* (a ſportſman's term) is lees.

172. It is not written immediately after a conſonant but in *harſh* and *marſh*.

## Of Si.

173. *Si* between two vowels has the *twenty-ſixth* ſound, as *confuſion*, confyoozhun; *ambroſial*, ambroazhal; *croſier*, croazhur.

174. *Ssi*, or *si* between a conſonant and a vowel, has the *twenty-ſeventh* ſound, as *paſſion*, paſhun; *emulſion*, emulſhun; *expanſion*, expanſhun.

## Of the ſounds es and esh.

175. The *twenty-fifth* ſound is denoted at the beginning of words by *s*, except before *e*, *i*, and *y*, where it is *c*, *s*, or *sc* promiſcuouſly, yet conſtantly the ſame in the ſame word.—At the end of words after the pure mutes it is *s*; after ſhort-ſounding vowels *ſs*; in ſeveral words mentioned or referred to in rules 162, 163, 167, 168, it is *se*; and *ce* in all other places. In the middle of words it is chiefly regulated by derivation.

176. The *twenty-ſeventh* ſound is denoted by *ci* before a vowel when the primitives end in *c*, *ce*, or *cy*: as *phyſic*, *phyſician*; *grace*, *gracious*; *efficacy*, *efficacious*:—by *si* when the primitives end in *d* after a conſonant, or in *—vert* making *—verſion*, or *—pel*, *—pulſion*; ſo *extend*, *extenſion*; *convert*, *converſion*; *repel*, *repulſion*:—by *ſsi* when the primitives end in *ſs*, or in *—mit* making *—miſſion*, as *diſmiſs*, *diſmiſſion*; *permit*, *permiſſion*:—by *ſhi* in *faſhion*, *cuſhion*, and *pariſhioner*:—by *ti* when the primitives end in *t* or *te*, except *—vert* and *—mit*, as *adopt*, *adoption*; *imitate*, *imitation*: alſo when *—ation* and *—atious* are added to the words, as they are in moſt inſtances not already mentioned, as *vex*, *vexation*, *vexatious*; *value*, *valuation*: Beſide which, *—duce* makes *—duction*; *—fy* *—faction*, *—fixion*, and *—fication*; *—poſe* *—poſition*; *—ſcribe* *—ſcription*; and *—ſolve* *—ſolution*. This ſound is expreſſed likewiſe by *ce* in *cetaceous*;—by *ch* in words derived from the French, rule 122;—and by *sh* in other poſitions.

## Of T.

177. *T* preſerves the *twenty-firſt* ſound, except in *th* and *ti*; See rules 178—185. It is ſilent in

*Bankruptcy, bankrupſy; boatſwain, boaſun; cheſnut, tſheſnut; Chriſtmas, kriſmus; eclat, eklau; gout, goo; hautboy, hoaboi; mortgage, maurgidzh; ragout, ragoo; toupet, toopee; trait, trai; waiſtcoat, weſkut;—between f and en, as ſoften, ſofn;—between s and en or le as faſten, faſn; neſtle, neſl.*

## Of Th.

178. *Th* has the *twenty-ſecond* ſound in the following words; and generally between vowels, as *heathen*, heedhn; *bathe*, baidh; but with ſeveral exceptions, as *author*, *nothing*.

*Beneath, beneedh; booth, boodh; brethren, bredhrin; to ſeeth, ſeedh; to ſheath, ſmooth, to ſooth, than, that, the, thee, their, them, then, thence, there, theſe, they, thine, this, thither, thoſe, thou, though thus, thy, underneath, worthy, wreath.*

179. In moſt other poſitions it has the *twenty-third* ſound, as in *thin*, *thank*, *both*, &c.

180. It has the *twenty-firſt* ſound, as if wanting the *h*, in *Anthony*, antoany; *impoſthume*, impoſtyoom; *phthyſic*, tizik; *Thames*, temz; *thill*, til; *Thomas*, tomus; *thyme*, taueem.

181. It is ſilent in *aſthma*; aſma; *clothes*, kloaz; *iſthmus*, iſmus.

182. *With* before a vowel is widh; before a conſonant with, as *with all my heart*, widh aul, &c. *without*, widhout; *withdraw*, withdrau; *with ten thouſand men*, with ten, &c.

## Of Ti.

183. Ti before a vowel has the *twenty-ſeventh* ſound, as *action*, akſhun; *patience*, paiſhens; *expatiate*, expaiſhait.

184. But it has not this ſound, but that of *t* and *i* (the *i* being long or ſhort according to other rules) at the beginning of words, as *tiara*,

taueeaira; before additional endings in words derived from thoſe that end in *ty*, as *pitieth*, pityith; in names in the old teſtament, as *Shephatiah*, ſhefataueea; in the word *Egyptiacum*, aidzhiptaueeakum; and before all conſonants, as *mutiny*, mutyny.

185. But when it occurs after *s*, it has the ſound of *ch* in rule 121, as *baſtion*, baſtſhion; and in one inſtance it is like *ſauee*, namely *ſatiety*, ſaſaueeity.

## Of V.

186. *V* has the *eighteenth* ſound, which it denotes. It is never written immediately before conſonants, nor at the end of words, but it is followed there by a ſilent *e*, which therefore does not neceſſarily lengthen the preceding vowel, and may follow a diphthong: Witneſs *live*, liv; *grieve*, greev;—*veneer* is fineer.—It is ſilent in *ſevennight*, ſennit; *twelvemonth*, twelmunth; *twelvepence*, twelpens.

## Of X.

187. *X* at the end of words and before conſonants has a double ſound compounded of the *twenty-ninth* and *twenty-fifth*; as *vex*, veks; *extract*, ekſtract. Except *beaux*, boaz; *billet doux*, billydoo; *clarencieux*, klarenſyoo.

188. It has the ſame ſound in the middle of words before a vowel when the following ſyllable is unaccented, as *lexicon*, lekſikun.

189. But in the ſame caſe before an accented ſyllable, its ſound is compounded of the *twenty-eighth* and *twenty-fourth*, as *example*, egzampl.—

And as an exception to the laſt rule, note, that words derived from thoſe mentioned in *this*, have the ſound of their primitives though the accent be changed, as *exaltation*, egzaultaiſhun, from *exalt*.

190. It has the *twenty-fourth* ſound at the beginning of words, as *Xenophon*, zenofon.

191. It is never followed by *s*, nor by *e* ſounding as *s*, but in *exceed*, *excel*, *eccentric*, *except*, *exceſs*, *exciſe*, *exciſeman*, *excite*.

## Of Z.

192. Z has invariably the ſound which it denotes, the *twenty-fourth*. Like *v* it is followed by an *e* at the end of words and before conſonants, but never has a ſhort vowel before it. *Zechin* is tſheekin ; *mezzotinto*, metſoatintoa.

193. This letter is only put where *s* would have its own hiſſing ſound, except in *blaze*, *breeze*, *doze*, *freeze*, *gauze*, *gaze*, *gloze*, *maze*, and a few more.

194. It is never doubled but in *fuzz* and *huzz*, before *le* as in *puzzle*, and in *dizzy*.

## Of the ſound Ezh.

195. This ſound is denoted by *si* between two vowels in derivative words, when the primitives end in *de* or *ſe*, as *perſuade*, *perſuaſion*, purſwaizhun; *reviſe*, *reviſion*, ryvizhun. Alſo in *croſier*, croazhur. And by *ge* in *rouge*, roozh.

196. It is alſo denoted by *s* or *z* before —*ure*, as in *pleaſure*, plezher ; *azure*, aizher. But this rule belongs to a different principle. See vol. II.

## EXERCISES.

(203) It iz neceſſery tu noa our dyooti bycauz it iz neceſſery tu doo it; and it is impoſſibl tu doo it ekſept wee noa it. (204) Thi dizaueer uv leezhur is mutſh moar naturall dhan uv biznifs and cair. (205) Meny dycreez ar enactid hooitſh thi nekſt ſeſhun ar repeeld. (206) Verce embāms vertu. (207) Hwot conſern iz waityur dhan dhat uv our fyootyur ſtait. (208) Hee dhat kweſtſhunith mutſh will lern mutſh. (209) Tomus dhi diſaueepl uv our Laurd woz not credyoolus. (210) Houzez ar bilt tu liv in, not tu looc on. (211) Outlauz and robberz, hoo braik widh awl thi wurld bycides, muſt keep faith among dhemcelvs. (212) Dhi ooai tu liv long iz tu liv agreeabli to dhi roolz uv temperanſe. (213) Hooair reezn or ſkriptyur iz ekſpres for ani opinyun it iz uv dyvaueen authoriti. (214) Noa man iz egzemt from dhi tſhanſez uv hyooman laueef. (215) Zerkſez ooept hooen hee look'd upon hiz faidid hoaſt. (216) Dhi akwyus yoomur uv dhi auee ooil not freez. (217) Our frends cee not our fauts, or conſeel dhem, or fofn dhem bauee dhair reprezentaiſhunz. (218) Liſn oa aueels untu mee. (219) Strenkth groaz moar from dhi waurmth uv ekſerſauees than uv cloaz.

(220) Ah, frend tu dazl let dhi vain dyzaueen
Tu raiz dhi thaut, or tutſh dhi hart bee dhaueen.

(221) Minerva graisfull with hur aizher aueez.

(222) Survai
Naityers ekſtendid fais, dhen ſqeptik ſai,
In dhiſs ooaueed oourld uv oounders kan yoo faueend
Noa ārt?

(223) Fairiſt bloſom du not ſlaueet
Dhat aidzh hooitſh yoo mai noa ſoa ſoon,
Dhi roazy maurn ryzaueens hur laueet
And maueeldur glori tu dhi noon.

(224) Noa moar ſhall naiſhun agenſt naiſhun raueez,
Nor ardent ooauryurz meet with haitfull aueez.

(225) Eterniti! thou pleezing dredfull thaut!
Throo hwot varaueeiti uv untraueed beeingz,
Throo hwot nyoo ſeenz and tſhainjez muſt ooee pas.

(226) A braueet taueeaira round hur forid taueed,
Tu juſtur boundz confaueen'd its raueezing praueed.

(227) Nuthing luvlyur can bee found
In oouman than tu ſtudi houſhoald gud.

(228) Summurz three taueemz ait, ſaiv won
Shee had toald; alaſs! too ſoon
After ſoa ſhaurt taueem uv breth
Tu houz ooith darcnis and ooith deth.
(229) Auee ooaiking vyoo'd with greef dhi raueezing ſun,
And fondli moarn'd dhi deer dylyoozhun gón.
(230) Auee'll ſtand its raidzh
Cām and unruſld az a ſummer'z cee
Hooen not a breth uv ooaueend flaueez oar its ſurfas.
(231) Hiz awltar breedhz
Ambroazhul oadurz and ambroazhul flourz.
(232) Bent on ſum maurgidzh, tu avaueed riproatſh,
Hee ſeeks baueé-ſtreets, and ſaivz dh' ekſpenſiv koatſh.
(233) 'Twoz dhen, Belinda, if repoart ſai troo,
Dhauee aueez furſt oapn'd on a billi-doo.

---

*** *In ſuch a detail of particulars as we have gone through in the excepted words, ſeveral muſt have eſcaped notice. Anxious, however, to come as near perfection as poſſible, the author has added the following, which happen to be preſent to his recollection.*

Caſtle-ſoap, *kaſteel-ſoap;* collogue, *coloag;* an invalid, *invaleed;* knowledge, *nolidzh;* receipt, *riſeet;* whortle-berry, *hurtlbery*; debt, *det.*

*He is ſenſible, too, that without new rules for the diviſion of ſyllables, adapted to true pronunciation, many of the foregoing will be of little uſe.—Such rules he is in poſſeſſion of, but is conſtrained, for want of room, to inſert them in the other volume, where they will be accompanied by the old* fantaſtical dogmas *dignified with the title of* grammatical, *which, though long exploded, and now paſſing to the* limbo *of chivalry and monkery, will be expected by many in a ſyſtem of this nature, and ſhall have a fair chance for preſervation. At preſent, the reader muſt be directed by rule* 6. *and Entick's accents, which will be explained in Chap.* VI.

## CHAP. V.

## Of CONTRACTION, SIMILARITY, and PUNCTUATION.

### Of ABBREVIATIONS.

197. WORDS are *contracted* or ſhortened by three methods. The firſt is *abbreviation*, when they are written ſhort, to be pronounced at length, and diſtinguiſhed by a full ſtop after them. There are *two kinds* of *abbreviation*: the *one public* and *fixed* where a word *muſt* be written according to that method. The following are abbreviations of that kind, but they may be written at length, except in the poſitions mentioned.——BEFORE NAMES, Dr. *Doctor*, Mr. *Maſter*, Mrs. *Miſtreſs*, Meſſrs. *Meſſieurs* (plural of Maſter), Rev. *Reverend*, St. *Saint*.—AFTER NAMES, A. B. *Bachelor of Arts*, A. M. *Maſter of Arts*, B. D. *Bachelor of Divinity*, B. L. *Bachelor of Laws*, Bart. *Baronet*, D. D. *Doctor of Divinity*, Eſq. *Eſquire*, F. R. S. *Fellow of the Royal Society*, F. A. S. *Fellow of the Antiquarian Society*, Kt. *Knight*, L. L. D. *Doctor of Laws*, M. D. *Doctor of Phyſic*, M. B. *Bachelor of Phyſic*.—IN BOOKS OF NAVIGATION AND VOYAGES, N. *north*, E. *eaſt*, S. *ſouth*, W. *weſt*, A. M. *forenoon*, P. M. *afternoon*, lat. *latitude*, lon. *longitude*.—IN ARITHMETIC, ACCOUNTS AND LETTERS RELATING TO TRADE, BEFORE OR ABOVE FIGURES, L. *pounds ſterling*—ABOVE OR AFTER THEM, s. *ſhillings*, d. *pence*, cwt. *hundred weights*, qrs. *quarters*, lb. *pounds weight*, oz. *ounces*, drs. *drams*, dwts, *penny-weights*, grs. *grains*, yds. *yards*,

pts. *pints*, qts. *quarts*, Cr. *creditor*, Dr. *debtor*, Do. *the ſame*, with a few others—AFTER *and* OR & FOLLOWING A NAME, Co. *company*—UNIVERSALLY, &c. *and ſo forth*, N. B. *Take great notice*, No. *number*, M S. *manuſcript*, MSS. *manuſcripts*.

198. The *other* abbreviation is *private* and *unſettled*, as in G. or Geo. for *George*, Cap. or Capt. for *Captain*. This ought never to be uſed except where notice is given, in private memorandums or familiar letters when the correſpondent is known both to underſtand and reliſh it, or in references where care muſt be taken that it be intelligible. For ſpecimens ſee Dilworth's New Guide, Part III. Chapter 1.

EXERCISES.

(234) Human voice and the ſeveral modifications thereof by the organs of ſpeech, viz. the letters of the alphabet---*Holder.* (235) I could not anſwer it to ye. world if I gave not yr. Ldp. my teſtimony of being ye. beſt huſband now living. (236) I am, Sr. wth. ye. utmoſt reſpect yr. obt. hbl. ſervt. (237) To the Reverend Joſeph Prieſtley Doctor of Laws Fellow of the Royal Society and ſo forth. (238) Before Doctor Warburton's edition, Critical Obſervations on Shakſpere had been publiſhed by Maſter Upton.

## Of SYNCOPE.

199. THE ſecond mode of contraction is Syncope, where the words are both written and pronounced ſhort, as I'll for *I will*, lov'd for *loved*. In this method the comma or apoſtrophe is put in the place of the diſcarded letter or letters. It ſhould never be uſed but in poetry or familiar diſcourſe, and there under very great reſtrictions.

200. The terminations *ed* and *eſt* added to verbs muſt be changed for *'d* and *'ſt* in verſe, except where the primitive word ends in *d* or *t*.

## EXERCISES.

(239) By foreign hands thy dying eyes were cloſed,
By foreign hands thy decent limbs compoſed,
By foreign hands thy humble grave adorned,
By ſtrangers honoured, and by ſtrangers mourned.

(240) Inured to toil and bitter bread,
He bowed his meek ſubmitted head,
And kiſſed thy fainted feet.

(241) Thou ſpreadeſt the curtains of the night.

(242) Ire envy and deſpair
Which marred his borrowed viſage and betrayed
Him counterfeit if any eye beheld.

(243) This my long-ſuffering, and my day of grace,
They who neglect and ſcorn ſhall never taſte,
But hard be hardened, blind be blinded ſtill.

201. The following ſyncopes are allowed by the practice of poets, and the ſmoothneſs of their ſound, but are not neceſſarily to be obſerved.——*I'll* for I will, pronounced aueel; *he'll*, he will, heel; *ſhe'll*, ſhe will, ſheel; *you'll*, you will, yool; *we'll*, we will, weel; *they'll*, they will, thail; *don't*, do not, doant; *can't*, cannot, cānt; *ſha'n't*, ſhall not, ſhānt; *wo'n't*, will not, woant; *e'er*, ever, air; *ne'er*, never, nair; *o'er*, over, oar; *I'm*, I am, aueem; *you're*, you are, yoor; *thou'rt*, thou art, dhourt; *wer'e*, we are, weer; *'s*, is, pronounced regularly, as *it's*, itce; *love's*, lovz; *they're*, they are, dhair; *th'* before a vowel for the, as *th' example*, the example, dhegzampl; *in't*, in it, int; *t'* before a vowel for to, as *t'attempt*, to attempt; *'tis*, it is, tiz; *'twill*, it will, twil; *'twas*, it was, twoz; *'twere*, it were, twer; *let's*, let us, letſe; *cent'*, centum, (a hundred), ſent; *'ſquire* for eſquire, ſcwaueer; *ta'en* for taken, tain; *t'other*, tudher, for the other, in ludicrous compoſition.———Others may likewiſe be met with, but

they are either unneceſſary, not ſhortening the word, as *heav'n* for heaven, or they are not naturalized, as *'vantage* for advantage.

EXERCISES.

(244) Th' applauſe of liſt'ning ſenates to command.—Gray.

(245) Tranſport'd with the view I am loſt
In wonder love and praiſe.

(246) No ceremony that to great ones 'longs.—Shakſpeare.

(247) 'Twas now the time when firſt Saul God forſook,
God Saul; the room in's heart wild paſſion took.——
Cowley.

(248) Say what thou canſt I will go along with thee.

(249) That in the captain is but a choleric word,
Which in the ſoldier is flat blaſphemy.

(250) She who never anſwers till a huſband cools.

(251) God is paid when man receives
To enjoy is to obey

## Of FIGURES.

202. THE third mode of contraction is the writing of figures or numeral letters for numbers, inſtead of expreſſing them in words. That by figures is called the Arabic notation. There are nine figures, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, which with the cipher, 0, or nothing, repreſent all numbers. One of theſe ſtanding in the firſt place to the right hand is ſo many units or ones, in the ſecond ſo many tens, in the third hundreds, in the fourth thouſands, in the fifth ten thouſands, ſo increaſing in a tenfold proportion at every change of place to infinity.

(252) In a Julian year there are 52 weeks 1 day and 6 hours, or 365 days and 1 quarter of a day. (253) How can 2 walk together except they be agreed.

203. The eaſieſt way of reading large numbers is to divide them into *periods* of three figures, beginning at the right hand: Then call the firſt period *ones*, the ſecond *thouſands*, the third *millions*, the fourth *thouſands of millions*, the fifth *billions*, &c. and read them by threes, not naming the millions at the fourth but the third place, not naming the ones, and where a period is filled with ciphers paſſing it ſilently over. Thus you may read any number whatever, if you can read theſe eight periods.

001 — 020 — 300 — 017 — 025

207——350——355.

EXERCISES.

(254) The commons having conſidered the eſtimates, voted 40000 ſeamen for the ſervice of the enſuing year, and about 60000 land forces including 11500 marines. They granted 433000 pounds to the Empreſs Queen of Hungary; 300000 to the King of Sardinia; 410000 pounds for the maintenance of 18000 Hanoverian auxiliaries; 161607 pounds for 6000 Heſſians; ſubſidies to the Electors of Cologn, Mentz, and Bavaria; and the ſum of 500000 pounds to enable his Majeſty to proſecute the war with advantage. In a word, the ſupplies amounted to 9425259 pounds, a ſum almoſt incredible, conſidering how the kingdom had been already drained of its treaſure.

204. The denoting of numbers by letters, is termed the Roman notation. Here I is one; V, five; X, ten; L, fifty; C, one hundred; D, five hundred; M, one thouſand. A leſs number *after* a greater is ſo much added to it, as LX. ſixty, *before* is ſo much taken away, as XL. forty.

EXERCISES.

(255) If men lived but XX years, we ſhould be ſatisfied if they died about XVI, or XVIII. (256) In MDLXXXVII, there ſat in the ſee of Rome a fierce thundering friar, that

would ſet all at VI. and VII. or at VI. and V. if you allude to his name. (257) XIX. in XX. of perplexing words might be changed into eaſy ones.

205. Numbers as exemplified above are termed *cardinal*. *Ordinal* numbers denote the order of things expreſſed by the words *firſt*, *ſecond*, &c. In the *Arabian notation* the laſt two letters of the word are frequently placed immediately after or near the top of the figures on the right hand, to mark the ordinals more diſtinctly; but this practice is not univerſal, and is never followed in references.

EXAMPLES.

*He entered the king of Pruſſia's dominions with his army on the 27th, 28th and 29th of the ſame month.* Smollet.

*A ſolid body of land (you ſay p. 214.) could not have anſwered the purpoſe of a habitable world.* De Luc to Hutton M. R v. 2, p. 585.

*I ſhall be with you the 21ſt or 22nd of July.*

EXERCISES.

(258) I found a letter dated January 31th.

(259) See Ariſtot. Rhet. p. 23rd. Ed. Oxon.

(260) I ſet out on the 21 of May, arrived the 2th of June, ſtopped there the 3, 4 and 5, and returned early in the morning of the 6.

(261) I ſupport my opinion on my 2, 3 and 4 poſitions by the authority of Lowth, Int. p. 21ſt, thirty-ſecond and 40th.

206. The Roman notation is commonly uſed after the names of ſovereigns, for the year of Chriſt in title pages, and for the larger diviſions of any work, both in the work itſelf and in references, where it is ſet the firſt. In other caſes the Arabian is uſed. But in ſentences, figures of any kind appear odd, unleſs for very large numbers, and even there words are better.

EXAMPLES.

*See Gal. II. 9. Eph. II. 20. Rev. III. 12. That is the ſecond chapter, and ninth verſe of Galatians, &c.----Milton, P. L. IV. 25, is Milton's Paradiſe Loſt, the twenty-fifth verſe of the fourth book.---Eccles. Hiſt. vol. III. p. 23.----------The German princes, who were aſtoniſhed with his ſucceſs, were farther diſcouraged by the intelligence which they had received of the death, firſt of Henry VIII. then of Francis I. their uſual reſources in every calamity.*

*Hume, Hiſt. of England, c. 34.*

EXERCISES.

(262) Edward 6th ſigned the warrant for burning Joan Bocher, on account of her opinions, with tears in his eyes, but was almoſt forced upon it by the primate of the church. See Hume, Hiſt. of Eng. vol. 4, p. CCCXXIV. (263) See Deut. 28, X. 1 Kings 8, 43. Pſm. LXXIX. VI. (264) There are 20 men of wit for 1 man of ſenſe.

207. Figures denoting ordinals generally follow names in writing, but when the ordinal is at length *the* muſt be inſerted, as likewiſe in reading. When the ordinal comes before a month it has *the* before, and *of* after, which are both omitted when expreſſed in figures, but ſupplied in reading.

EXAMPLES.

*For this purpoſe Gregory IX. publiſhed his decretals, which are a collection of forgeries.*--Hume.---*This is read, For this purpoſe Gregory the ninth, &c.-----This happened June 19th.--Read June the nineteenth.-----Dated London, 30th January.--Read the thirtieth of January.*

EXERCISES.

(265) The luxury of Leo the tenth, and the ſtubbornneſs of his ſucceſſors, were made as inſtrumental to the reformation on one hand, as the vices of Henry the VIII. on the other. (266) I wrote to you January the ſeventh, and received no anſwer till 13th March.

208. *Adverbial* numbers, as firſt, ſecondly, thirdly, &c. are often denoted by figures with three or four of the concluding letters annexed; thus 1st. or 1ſt, 2ndly, 3rdly, 4thly, &c.

EXERCISE.

(267) 1 Metals are more durable than plants; 2 they are more ſolid; 3 they are wholly ſubterrany.

Of Words differing in ſpelling—alike in ſound, &c.

209. WORDS that are ſimilar or even alike in ſound, are frequently very different in ſpelling and ſignification. Thus *bo*, *bow*, *beau*, are ſounded alike, but the firſt is a terrifying exclamation, the ſecond ſignifies an inſtrument to ſhoot with, the third a fop. A copious and tolerably accurate table of theſe may be found in Entick's dictionary, to which let conſtant reference be made in rectifying the following ſentences.

210. Another ſource of miſtakes both in writing and ſpeaking Engliſh, is the ſimilarity of words in appearance, when different both in ſound and ſignification. As *mediate* and *meditate*, *proſecute* and *perſecute*.

211. A ſmaller reſemblance than this, frequently leading people wrong, ought to be noticed in a practical grammar. Many put *extinguiſh* for *diſtinguiſh*, *entire* for *retired*, &c.

212. Different ſenſes of phraſes compoſed of the ſame words in different orders, are apt to miſlead the inattentive; likewiſe differences made in the ſenſe of a word by adding another word to it. *Several of the*—means a number not the whole; *the ſeveral*—means the whole individually taken. A table of the ſimilars mentioned in the *laſt three* rules will be very uſeful.

## TERMS APT TO CAUSE MISTAKES.

ADDITION, The act of adding—the thing added.
EDITION, The publication of a book.

ADAPT, To fit.
ADOPT, To place in a nearer relation

A FEW, Some.
FEW, Scarce any.

AFFECTATION, An artificial ſhow.
AFFECTION, Love—paſſion of any kind.

A HALF-CROWN, A piece of Engliſh money.
HALF-A-CROWN, Two ſhillings and ſixpence.

A LITTLE, Some.
LITTLE, Scarce any.

A PERIL, A danger.
APPAREL, Clothing.

A WAY, A road.
AWAY, From a place, perſon, or thing.

BESIDE, *prep.* More than.
BESIDES, *adv.* or *conj.* More than that.

BLESS, *v.* To make happy.
BLISS, *s.* Happineſs.

CREATOR, The Maker—God.
CREATURE, The thing made.

DEFERENCE, Reſpect.
DIFFERENCE, Diſtinction—a quarrel.

EMINENT, High, dignified, remarkable.
IMMINENT, Threatening—dangerous and near.

ENTIRE, Whole.
RETIRED, Removed from buſtle—little known.

ETERNAL, Without end.
EXTERNAL, Outward.
INTERNAL, Inward.

FLEE, To eſcape.
FLY, To move in the air—to paſs ſwiftly.

HUMAN, Belonging to man.
HUMANE, Kind.

HUMOROUS, Jocular—merry
HUMORSOME, Peeviſh—petulant.

IMPRUDENT, Not wiſe.
IMPUDENT, Too bold.

INGENIOUS, (indzheenyus) Witty—cunning.
INGENUOUS, (indzhenyoous) Candid—honeſt.

INTIMATE, *v.* To hint—*adj.* familiar.
IMITATE, To copy.

LAY, To place—did lie.
LIE, To reſt upon or againſt ſomething.

MEDIATE, To act between perſons with a friendly deſign.
MEDITATE, To think cloſely.

MORAL, Good—belonging to behaviour.
MORTAL, That muſt die.

PALACE, A king's houſe.
PLACE, Part of ſpace.

PARSON, A pariſh prieſt—vulgarly any preacher.
PERSON, An individual rational being.

PATRON, One who ſupports or protects.
PATTERN, An example.

PROSECUTE, To puniſh according to law—to follow.
PERSECUTE, To puniſh in a wrong ſpirit or manner.

RESPECTABLE, Deſerving honour or eſteem.
RESPECTFUL, Full of civility.
RESPECTIVE, Particular.

SACRED, Holy.
SECRET, Private.

SEVERAL, Some.
THE SEVERAL, Every—all taken ſingly.

SUCCESSFUL, Proſperous.
SUCCESSIVE, That come immediately one after another.

THOROUGH, *adj.* Entire—paſſing through.
THROUGH, *prep.* From end to end—by means of.

## EXERCISES.

(268) A good poet will adopt the very ſounds, as well as words, to the things he treats of. (269) Let not the mind off a ſtudent bee under the influence of warm affectation to things off ſenſe, when he comes to the ſearch of truth. (270) There ought to be ſome other reaſon beſides revenge, to induce you to perſecute a felon. (271) He may lay open to ſnares. *Sterne, Sermons.* (272) Envy lays between beings equal in nature, though unequal in circumſtances. (273) I have heard a few young fellows offer to ſing in company, that did not expoſe themſelves. (274) The afflicted ſleep a little. (275) They accordingly interpoſed their meditation, in a round and princely manor. (276) To take a way rewards and puniſhments, is only pleaſing to a man who reſolves knot to live mortally. (277) This was then the church witch was daily increaſed by the edition of parſons received into it. (278) St. Michael his mentioned has the pattern of the Jews, and his now to be taken by the Chriſtians, has the protector-general of hour religion. (279) Honeſt Flaminius you are very reſpectively welcome. *Shakſpeare.* (280) Infuſe into their young breaſts an ingenious and noble ardour. (281) The king his butt a man as eye am: the violet ſmells to hymn as it doth to me: awl is ſenſes have butt humane conditions. (282) The wit of both ſexes is altogether taken up in continuing ſingular and humorſome diſguiſes. *Swift.* (283) Altercation though it be from worſe too better hath inn it inconveniencies. (284) Their his know ſuch impudent parſon has he that neglects God hand is ſole. (285) Such a book wood not be deer hat a half-crown. (286) He was admitted into they moſt ſacred and entire thoughts off is royal maſter.

(287) Heavy proſecution ſhall ariſe
On all who in the worſhip perſevere
Of ſpirit and truth.

(288) The happy have hole deys and thoſe they uſe;
Th' unhappy have butt ours, and theſe they looſe.

(289) Send the ſucceſsful ills thorough ages down,
And let each weeping father tell his ſun.

(290) For him, through hoſtile camps I bent my way;
For him thus proſtrate at thy feet I lay;
Large gifts proportion'd to thy wrath I bear. *Pope.*

(291) I'll fly from ſhepherds, flocks, and flowery plains. *Ib.*

## Of STOPS.

213. STOPS are four; the *comma* (,) to ſtop the reader while he counts *one* at the rate at which he reads; the *ſemicolon* (;) while he counts *two*; the *colon* (:) *three*; the *period* or *full ſtop* (.) *four*. The following glaring examples will ſhew the neceſſity of ſtops.

### EXERCISES.

(292) King Charles walked and talked half an hour after he was beheaded. (293) This part ſhall never be taken from us this bright beam of our future glory ſhall never be put out but in the life to come. We ſhall enjoy as much of the kingdom as we are able and ſhall be clothed with all the light and ſplendor of the heavenly glory. (294) We believe not, becauſe of thy ſaying; for we have heard him ourſelves and know that; this is indeed the Chriſt.

(295) The Lord will come and he will not;
Keep ſilence but ſpeak out.

(296) Every lady in this land
Hath twenty nails on each hand;
Five and twenty on hands and feet;
And this is true without deceit.

(297) The poor wren
The moſt diminutive of birds will fight
Her young ones, in her neſt againſt the owl.

214. An unpointed diſcourſe naturally divides itſelf into ſuch parts as contain every one a complete aſſertion or full ſenſe: and at each of theſe a period muſt be placed. N.B. After a period the next word muſt begin with a capital.

EXERCISES.

(298) Nature ſeems to have taken a particular care to diſſeminate her bleſſings among the different regions of the world with an eye to this mutual intercourſe and traffic among mankind that the natives of the ſeveral parts of the globe might have a kind of dependance upon one another and be united together by their common intereſt almoſt every degree produces ſomething peculiar to it the food often grows in one country and the ſauce in another the fruits of Portugal are corrected by the produce of Barbadoes and the infuſion of a China plant is ſweetened with the pith of an Indian cane our morning's draught comes to us from the remoteſt corners of the earth we repair our bodies by the drugs of America and repoſe ourſelves under Indian canopies my friend Sir Andrew calls the vineyards of France our gardens the ſpice iſlands our hotbeds the Perſians our ſilk weavers and the Chineſe our potters nature indeed furniſhes us with the bare neceſſaries of life but traffic gives us a great variety of what is uſeful and at the ſame time ſupplies us with every thing that is convenient and ornamental.

(299) God had dealt very graciouſly with our nation he had given us peace at home and abroad and a king wiſe and good beyond his years above all he had cauſed the pure light of his goſpel to ſhine among us he looked for righteouſneſs but behold a cry yea the cry of thoſe who even then expired in the flames entered into the ears of the Lord of ſabaoth.

215. When a period contains two or more members, that, ſeparately, would form periods themſelves, but which are joined by ſomething in their ſenſe that forbids their diſunion, a colon is employed to diſtinguiſh them.

EXERCISES.

(300) She deſired to know of him what was reputed the beſt colour of hair ſhe aſked whether his queen or ſhe had the fineſt hair ſhe even enquired which of them he eſteemed the faireſt

perſon a very delicate queſtion and which he prudently eluded by ſaying that her majeſty was the faireſt perſon in England and his miſtreſs in Scotland ſhe next demanded which of them was talleſt he replied his queen then is ſhe too tall ſaid Elizabeth for I myſelf am of a juſt ſtature. (301) Honoria's diſpoſition is of a very different turn her thoughts are wholly bent upon conqueſt and arbitrary power. (302) The poor work too much and know too little inceſſant labour ſtupifies the mental faculties and produces an inclination to ſatisfy the cravings of nature beyond the neceſſities of nature.

216. When either a period or a part divided by a colon contains parts of which the firſt *is* complete, and the ſecond *may be* by ſupplying ſomething from the firſt, ſuch parts are diſtinguiſhed by a ſemicolon. Alſo when the parts are ſeparately complete but there is a conjunction in the latter, and when there are correſponding conjunctions, one in every diviſion.

EXERCISES.

(303) One of the chief pleaſures of my life is to hear what paſſes in the world to know what are the ſchemes of the politic the aims of the buſy and the hopes of the ambitious what changes of public meaſures are approaching who is likely to be cruſhed in the colliſion of parties who is climbing to the top of power and who is tottering on the precipice of diſgrace.

(304) No more ſhe ſaid
When poor blind Ball with ſtumbling tread
Fell prone o'erturn'd the pannier lay
And her maſh'd eggs beſtrew'd the way.

(305) When puppies prate the huntſman cry'd
They ſhew both ignorance and pride
Fools may our ſcorn not envy raiſe
For envy is a kind of praiſe.

217. Any of the parts before mentioned may be divided again, by obſerving what portions of them might be omitted ſo as to leave a certain complete ſenſe; for ſuch portions muſt be diſtin-

guiſhed by commas. The caſe abſolute and words expreſſing an addreſs are to be diſtinguiſhed in the ſame manner. Alſo a number of verbs, ſubſtantives, or adjectives, that are all equally connected with one word, except two that have a conjunction to join them. Alſo large parts of a long ſentence require commas before relatives and conjunctions.

EXERCISES.

(306) Sir Francis Bacon obſerves that a well written book compared with its rivals and antagoniſts is like Moſes's ſerpent that immediately ſwallowed up and devoured thoſe of the Egyptians. (307) The parliament itſelf by an unprecedented ſervility helped to confirm James in the exalted idea he had entertained of the royal office and the doctrine of an abſolute and unconditional ſubmiſſion on the part of ſubjects which in the reign of his father was in a great meaſure confined to the precepts of a Laud a Sibthorpe and a Maynwaring was now taught as the avowed doctrine of the Church of England was acknowleged by the two univerſities and implicitly avowed by a large majority of the people ſo great indeed was the change from the commencement of the reign of Charles the firſt to the commencement of the reign of his ſon James that at this ſhameful period the people gloried in having laid all their privileges at the foot of the throne and execrated every generous principle of freedom as ariſing from a ſpirit totally incompatible with the peace of ſociety and altogether repugnant to the doctrines of Chriſtianity.

(308) Their much-lov'd wealth imparts
Convenience plenty elegance and arts.

(309) Thy deſires
Are wolfiſh bloody ſtarv'd and ravenous.

(310) My lord as I was ſewing in my cloſet
Prince Hamlet with his doublet all unbrac'd
No hat upon his head his ſtocking looſe
Pale as his ſhirt his knees knocking each other
Came up to me.

(311) ——With which ſhe calculates computes and ſcans
All diſtance motion magnitude.

(312) The love of praiſe howe'er conceal'd by art
Reigns more or leſs and glows in every heart

The proud to gain it toils on toils endure
The modeſt ſhun it but to make it ſure
O'er globes and ſceptres now on thrones it ſwells
Now trims the midnight lamp in college cells
'Tis Tory Whig it plots prays preaches pleads
Harangues in ſenates ſqueaks in maſquerades.
(313) When I faint with ſummer's heat
He ſhall lead my weary feet
To the ſtreams that ſtill and ſlow
Through the verdant meadow flow.

## Of other MARKS.

218. THE other marks uſed in writing are 1. The *note of interrogation* ( ? ) placed aftera queſtion as, *Who wants me?* 2. The *note of exclamation* ( ! ) placed after any thing pathetic or wonderful as, *What ſorrow! what amaze!* Theſe two are not ſtops, being uſed for any of the four juſt mentioned, and ſometimes where no ſtop could be proper. 3. The *hyphen* (-) joining compound words as *rock-ſalt*, and parts of words, as at l. 17. 4. A *diaereſis* (¨) placed over a vowel when two that meet muſt both be ſounded as *Jöel*. 5. The *paragraph* (¶) and 6. The *ſection* (§) uſed to denote diviſions of the ſame name in treatiſes. 7. The *caret* ( ^ ) pointing the place of ſomething omitted but afterwards written above as, Ye have for ſold yourſelves nought. 8. The *breve* ( ˘ ) denoting ſhort vowels, for a ſimilar uſe of the hyphen ſee *Scheme of ſounds*, *nos.* 3, 4. 9. The *parentheſis* ( ) incloſes ſomething of a foreign nature thrown into a ſentence by the author as, Grief *(I juſt obſerved)* purifies the ſoul. 10. *Brackets* or *crotchets* [ ] contain the like interpolation by a different hand from the author as, As many as were or-

dained [*ſome read diſpoſed*] to eternal life believed. The two laſt ſhould be avoided as much as poſſible either by foot-notes, ſeparate ſentences, or commas. 11. *Inverted commas* (“) mark a quotation or ſpeech as, I can very juſtly ſay with the antient ſage “*I am never leſs alone than when alone*”: here the commas are placed in their proper poſition, only at the head of the word, at the end of the quotation. 12. The *index* (☞) points out ſomething remarkable. 13. A *brace* (⏞) joins a *triplet*, or three verſes that rhyme to each other, as

See on the mountain's ſouthern ſide,
Where the proſpect opens wide,
Where the evening gilds the tide,
How cloſe and ſmall the hedges lie!
What ſtreaks of meadows croſs the eye!——*Dyer.*

14. An *apoſtrophe* (') ſee rule 199. 15. An *accent* (') ſee Chap. VI. 16. An *aſteriſm* (*) 17. An *obeliſk* (†) 18. *parallels* (‖) refer to the bottom of the page. 19. A *daſh* or *break* (—) denotes a pauſe, when it cannot conveniently be denoted by the regular ſtops, and is made ſhorter or longer (— —— ———) according to the time that the pauſe ſhould be held.

## EXERCISES.

(314) Why teems the earth Why melt the vernal ſkies
Why ſhines the ſun to make Paul Diack [a tulip] riſe
From morn to night has Florio gazing ſtood
And wonder'd how the gods could be ſo good
What ſhape what hue was ever nymph ſo fair
He doats he dies he too is rooted there
O ſolid bliſs which nothing can deſtroy
Except a cat bird ſnail or idle boy

(315) The preſs reſtrain'd nefandous thought
In vain our fires have nobly fought

(316) But let it in a word be ſaid
The moon was up and men abed
The napkins white the carpets red
The gueſts withdrawn had left the treat
And down the mice ſat tete-a-tete

(317) I will conclude with the ideas of Montaigne I have here only made a noſegay of culled flowers and have brought nothing of my own but the thread that ties them. (318) name gods
Mammon was the of one of the heathen who was ſuppoſed to over
preſide riches.

219. Care muſt be taken that *Proſe* be written in lines of exactly equal lengths, and verſe in lines of the ſame length that the Poet intends it. Every line in verſe ſhould begin with a capital: in proſe capitals are put according to other rules.——See the note to rule 239.

EXERCISES.

(319) The ſcience of human nature is, like
All other ſciences, reduced to
A few clear points: There are not many certain
Truths in this world.

(320) Lo, the poor Indian! whoſe untutor'd mind ſees God in clouds, or hears him in the wind; his ſoul proud ſcience never taught to ſtray far as the ſolar walk or milky way: Yet ſimple nature to his hope has given, behind the cloud-topt hill an humbler heaven; ſome ſafer world in depth of woods embrac'd, ſome happier iſland in the watry waſte, where ſlaves once more their native land behold, no fiends torment, no Chriſtians thirſt for gold.

(321) The gentle ſwan, with graceful pride, her glaſſy plumage laves, and ſailing down the ſilver tide, divides the whiſpering waves. (322) The bell ſtrikes one. We take no note of time but from its loſs. To give it then a tongue is wiſe in man. As if an angel ſpoke, I feel the ſolemn ſound. If heard aright, it is the knell of my departed hours.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of PROSODY.

220. ANY word of ſeveral ſyllables has one more forcibly expreſſed and diſtinctly heard than the reſt; as *ab* in *abbot*, *bide* in *abide*, *pov.* in *poverty*, *bil* in *ability*. This ſtreſs of the voice is in our language termed the *accent*: PROSODY is that part of Grammar which explains and regulates it. Previouſly to entering upon the rules, it will be uſeful to write down the accented ſyllable in each of the following familiar words.

EXERCISES.

(323) Apple, afternoon, entirely, alphabet, behold, believe, between, benefit, bitter, cannon, conceit, correction, conſtitution, diſpoſition, determine, deny, duty, entertainment. (324) Fooliſhneſs, generoſity, grenadier, holy, indeed, juſtice, kingdom, lion, magazine, notice, obtain, obey, pitiful, quantity, quarter, return, ſorrow, ſubmit, ſenſible, tenderly, univerſal, univerſality.

221. General rules may be given, ſome of more ſome of leſs certainty, reſpecting the place of the accent; as that words not derived from other Engliſh words nor exceeding three ſyllables are commonly accented on the firſt, as *làbour*, *càpital*, *vìctory*.

222. Syllables, that are added in derivative words, ſeldom are accented or change the accent of the primitives.

*This appears in unàpt, gòdly, thínking, ſwèeteſt, ſhórten, behóld, unàble, mùſical, tûnable, fàvorable, inélegancy, unthínking, unpóliſhed, chíldiſhneſs, pleáſure, wòrſhipful, diſdaínful, gòodneſs, afóot, diſhónorable. Except remédiable, irréparable, diſputable, cónfeſſor.*

The prepoſitions mentioned in Etymology generally throw the accent to the ſecond ſyllable.

Some ſay *advèrtiſement* (advértizment) others *advertíſement* (advertaueezment).

223. Subſtantives formed with the prepoſitions *out*— and *in*— oppoſed to *out*— are accented on the firſt ſyllable, as *cútcry*, *oútwork*, *ínroad*.

224. But words ending in —*eous*, —*ic*, —*ion*, —*ious*, —*ial*, —*ian*, —*ſive*, and —*ity*, have the accent on the ſyllable immediately preceding the termination, as

*Balſámic, incarnàtion, unanímity, vexátious, cetàceous, ſuperfícial, muſícian, comprehènſive. Except rhètoric, chóleric, tùrmeric, lùnatic, ſplénetic, héretic, pólitic, aríthmetic.*

225. Verbs, in compounding a word, have the accent, wherever placed; as *breákfaſt*, *backſlíde*, *gòbetween*.

226. Several words of two ſyllables, that are both *ſubſtantives* and *verbs*, have the accent on the firſt ſyllable in the former caſe and on the ſecond in the latter, as *an ábſtract*, to *abſtràct*; an *àccent*, to *accènt*; an *áffix*, to *affíx*; a *cèment*, to *cemènt*.

*Alſo the words concert, conduct, confine, conſort, conteſt, contract, convert, converſe, convict, collect, convoy, compound, deſert, deſcant, diſcount, digeſt, export, extract, eſſay, ferment, frequent, import, incenſe, inſult, object, perfume, preſent, produce, permit, project, rebel, record, refuſe, ſubject, ſurvey, torment, tranſfer, tranſport, unite.*

227. Words of two ſyllables are accented upon the latter if there be a diphthong in it as, *maintáin*, *rejoíce*, *applaùſe*. Except thoſe in —*our* and —*ow*, as *bèllow*, *hónour*; and ſubſtantives in —*ain*, as *mòuntain*.

228. The ſame may be obſerved of words of that kind ending in a conſonant and ſilent *e*, as *deride*; or in two conſonants, as *attend*.

229. Words that end in —*ator* are accented on the laſt ſyllable but one, as *depredàtor*, *ſpectàtor*. Except òrator.

230. Thoſe that end in —*ance*, —*ant*, —*ate*, —*ence*, —*ent*, or —*tive*, have the accent on the laſt ſyllable but two, as *élegant*, *impértinent*, *commùnicate*, *vòcative*. Except 1. When the primitive is accented on the laſt ſyllable as *convèyance*, from *convèy*. 2. When two conſonants precede the terminations, as *convèrſant*. 3. When *i* comes before any of the firſt five forming a diphthong, as *óbviate*. In theſe caſes the accent is on the laſt ſyllable but one.

*Further exceptions are défiance, reliance, concùpiſcence, ſignífica-tive, commùnicative, ſúbſtantive, recitative, pròteſtant, confidànt, complaiſánt, èxcellent.*

231. Alſo thoſe that end in —*ay*, —*fy*, —*phy*, —*gy*, —*my*, —*ery*, —*ſy*, —*cal*; as *yéſterday*, *elèctrify*, *philóſophy*, *aſtrólogy*, *aſtrònomy*, *fàntaſy*, *prophétical*. Except *àcademy*, by ſome pronounced regularly *acàdemy*; *déletery*, *mònaſtery*, *bàptiſtery*, *préſbytery*, *èpilepſy*, *cóntroverſy*.

232. Alſo words not derived from Engliſh primitives, that end in —*er* or —*ure*, as *aſtròloger*, *primogèniture*. Except *jùdicature*, *légiſlature*, *árchitecture*, *álabaſter*, *ſálamander*.

233. Alſo words in —*ous* except —*eous* and —*ious* where the accent immediately precedes; and when two conſonants meeting before it fix the accent there as *tremèndous*, alſo the word *rèndezvous*, (ròndivoo).

234. In thoſe that end in *---ble*, *---ory*, and *---cle* not derived from Engliſh words, the accent is as back as poſſible under the ſixth from the end, unleſs two conſonants coming before *---able* fix the accent juſt before it. Examples, *tàbernacle*, *cónventicle*, *próbatory*; *àcceptable* is an exception from the laſt remark.

235. Words ending in *---cy*, *---ny* or *---ary* throw the accent as far back as the fourth ſyllable, ſubject however to the laſt exception; as in *demòcracy*.

*Further exceptions are anèmony, cacóphony, monótony, and words in —gony which accent the laſt ſyllable but two, as hexàgony; alſo còmmentary, mòmentary, vòluntary, àdverſary.*

236. Words ending in *---ee*, *---eer*, or *---ier*, and thoſe of *French* derivation are accented on the laſt ſyllable as *engineèr*, *grenadier*, *magazìne*, *recitatíve*. Except *committee*, lévee, *tróchee*.

237. Proper names ending with *----aim*, *---a-us*, *---e-a*, *---e-us*, *---i-ah*, *---i-as*, *---jah*, *---o-am*, *---ram*, are accented on the laſt ſyllable but one; as *Kirjathàim*, *Menelàus Berèa*, *Timéus*, *Hilkìah*, *Urías*, *Urìjah*, *Rehobòam*, *Adóram*.

238. Some words of many ſyllables have two, others three accents; of which however one is the moſt forcible, as in *còngregátion*, *ìncorrùptibìlity*.

239. But the *firſt* reſource, before we are acquainted with rules, and the *laſt* where they fail of univerſal extent, is *a good dictionary*. In that of *Entick* improved by *Crackelt*, there are three modes of accenting, which both diſtinguiſh the accented ſyllable and aſcertain its quantity.——
1. The *accented conſonant* when the marked ſyllable

ends with a conſonant as *Govern*, *Ingenuous*, *boldly*. 2. The *accented vowel*, when the marked ſyllable ends with that vowel which the accent ſtands over, or with *e ſilent* after the conſonant that follows it, as *Rùbric*, *Hómely*. 3. The *double-accented vowel*, which ſounds ſhort, as if a conſonant ended the ſyllable; but cannot eaſily be ſo divided on account of *ce*, *ci*, *cy*, *ge*, *gi*, *ſe*, *ſi*, *ti*, &c. following the vowel. So *Vi'cious* (viſh-us). *

EXERCISES *to be marked.*

(325) Abſorb, abſtruſe, acataleptic, accouple, acid, acidity, Ananias, bacon, bagatelle, balance, balſamic, banquet, baron, baſtinado, beauteouſly, bilander, binocular, binomial, brachygraphy, capon, careen, carnality, carnivorous, diſpoſition, diſtinguiſh, dithyrambic, docile, duodecimo. (326) Efficient, eradicate, eremitical, erudition, eſpecial, etymology, fletcher, focus, forerunner, geographical, geography, geometry, geſticulation, Hezekiah, humility, Jeroboam, inequality, literati, meadow, neſtle, nutritious, obeſity, obſcurity, peccadillo, perſonification, pewter, pronoun, quadrilateral. (327) Regicide, repudiate, requiem, reticular, ſalary, ſatire, ſatirize, ſatiric, ſavour, Socinian, ſodality, Stoic, ſubitaneous, ſublunary, ſubordinate, tangibility, theodolite, theological, threnody, uneligible, vulnerable, uxorious, wakefulneſs, weather, widow, writing, yellow, youthfully, zealous, zeletic, zootomy.

---

* The rules of verſification are uſually annexed to Proſody.—As Poetry is not to be enforced as a taſk, but encouraged as a talent, the reader will find the laws of ſcanſion and ſomething of the graces of numbers in the ſecond volume.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of ETYMOLOGY.

240. ETYMOLOGY ſhews the *derivation* of words; or how *ſome* words are formed from *others*. It is of two different kinds, the *explanatory* and the *inflective*. The *explanatory* ſhews how words of one ſignification are derived from thoſe of another, and thus illuſtrates their meaning. As when it is obſerved that *woody* is from *wood*, and that *day-break* is from *day* and to *break*. This part of grammar may, by learned men, be extended from one language to another; as when *manufacture* is derived from *manus*, a hand, and *facio*, to make. But in treating of Engliſh Grammar it muſt be reſtrained to that language, and ſuch parts of others as are fully ſtated and explained in the ſyſtem where they muſt be uſed.——Words are formed from others either by adding ſomething imperfect to the primitive or word underived, and this forms *derivative* words; or by putting two or more entire words together, which produce *compound* words. So *woody* is a derivative; *roſebud* a compound. It alſo accounts for the original of many ſimple words, from their ſound or foreign languages; but, then, it is very remote from the buſineſs of a merely Engliſh ſchool-book.

241. The parts which are employed in forming derivatives are either *prepoſitions*, that is, parts placed before the primitives, as *re*— in *return*; or terminations, words placed after the primitives, as —*iſh* in *ſaltiſh*. Many which may be called primitives are not entire words in Engliſh, as *manu* and *facture* in *manufacture*.

## SOME OF THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS, TERMINATIONS, AND IMPERFECT PRIMITIVES.

i. A—, *eng.* Before ſubſtantives, *in*, *on* or *at*: as, *abed*, in bed; *afoot*, on foot; *atop*, at the top. Before verbs, it adds to the *ſolemnity*, but not to the *meaning*; So *riſe* and *ariſe* are ſynonymous.

ii. A—, *lat.* *from* or away.—*Amove*, move away. See *ab.*

iii. A—, *gr.* *being without.*—*Atheiſt*, one without God. See *an.*

iv. AB—, *lat.* as *a*—, and *abs*—; *a*— precedes *m*, *abs*—*c* or *t*; and *ab*— the reſt.—*Abduce*, draw away.

v. —ABLE, *lat.* and *eng.* *fit for* or *liable to.*—*Commendable*, fit to be commended; *Numerable*, liable to be numbered.—Thoſe primitives, that take any one of the following terminations, will take the reſt, if they admit their ſignification in Engliſh: —*able*, —*al*, —*ance*, —*ant*, —*ary*, —*ate*, —*ation*, —*ative*, —*ous*. So *numerable*, *numeral*, *numerary*, *enumerate*, *numeration*, *numerous*:—*comparable*, *comparative*:—*variable*, *variance*:—*diſputable*, *diſputant.*

vi. ABS—, *lat.* See *a*—, and *ab*—. *Abſterge*, wipe away.

vii. AC—, *lat.* See *Ad. Accede*, to come to; *Acquieſce*, to be quiet to or with.

viii. AD—, *lat.* *to* or *near.*—*Adjacent*, lying near; *Adjunct*, joined to. Before *q* it is *ac*—, and before *c*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*, it is *ac*—, *af*—, *ag*—, &c.

ix. AF—, *lat.* See *ad*—. *Affluent*, rich, flowing to.

x. AFTER—, *eng.* *latter.*—*Afternoon*, later than noon.

xi. AG—, *lat.* See *ad*—. *Aggregate*, gather together.

xii. —AGE, *eng.* after ſubſtantives, *what is paid for* or *to.*—*Tonnage*, what is paid for a ton; *Porterage*, what is paid to a porter:—after verbs, —*ing*, as *marriage*, marrying.

xiii. AGON, *gr.* *ſtruggle*, *contention.* *Antagoniſt*, contender againſt.

xiv. AL—, *lat.* See *ad*—. *Alliteration*, letter anſwering to letter.

xv. —AL, *lat.* *belonging to.*—*Corporal*, belonging to the body.

xvi. AMPHI—, *gr. about,—Amphitheatre*, a theatre round about; *both—Amphibious*, living in both elements, air and water.

xvii. AN—, *lat.* See *Ad.—Annihilate*, to bring to nothing.

xviii. AN—, *gr.* See *a—; an*—is put before vowels, *a*—before conſonants.—*Anarchy*, being without chief.

xix. —ANA. *remains, looſe obſervations of ſome noted perſon*, as *Scaligerana, Johnſoniana.*

xx. —ANCE, *lat.* and *eng. the act or ſtate of.—Conveyance*, the act of conveying; *variance*, the ſtate of varying.

xxi. ANIM, *lat. mind* or *ſpirit.—Magnanimous*, of great mind; *Animate*, make full of ſpirit.

xxii. ANN, or ENN, *lat. a year.—Annual*, yearly; *Perennial*, laſting through the year.

xxiii. —ANT, *lat. that does anything. Compliant*, that complies.

xxiv. ANT—, *gr.* See *anti—. Antagoniſt*, contender againſt.

xxv. ANTE—, *lat. before.—Antepaſt*, a foretaſte.

xxvi. ANTHROP, *gr. man. Miſanthropy*, hatred of man.

xxvii. ANTI—, *gr.* againſt; it is *ant—*, before vowels. *Antichriſt*, againſt Chriſt.

xxviii. AP—, *lat.* See *ad—. Append*, hang to.

xxix. AR—, *lat.* See *ad—. Arrange*, range to.

xxx. —AR, *lat. belonging to.—Ocular*, belonging to the eye.

xxxi. ARCH, *gr. lat.* and *eng. chief. Archangel*, chief angel.

xxxii. —ARD, *eng. one of any character.—Dullard*, one that is dull.

xxxiii. —ARY, *lat.* in ſubſtantives, *a place for*; as *library*, a place for books: in adjectives, *given to*; as *literary*, given to letters, or learning.

xxxiv. AS—*lat.* See *ad—. Aſſume*, to take to, ſuppoſe.

xxxv. —ASTER, *lat. wild* or *rude. Poetaſter*, a rude rhymer.

xxxvi. AT—, *lat.* See *ad—. Atteſt*, to witneſs to.

xxxvii. —ATE, *lat.* in adjectives, *poſſeſſed of*, as *fortunate*, poſſeſſed of good fortune; in verbs, *to make to be* or *have*, as *ſubſtantiate* to make to exiſt or to have or be a ſubſtance.

xxxviii. ---ATION, *lat. the act* or *ſtate.*---*Gratification*, the act of pleaſing or ſtate of being pleaſed.

xxxix. BE---, *eng.* with verbs, *over.*---*Bedaub*, daub over: with ſubſtantives it forms verbs and has a very variable ſignification, as *befool*, *benight*, *bewitch*, &c. It is *by* in *betimes*; *for and beforehand* in *beſpeak*.

xl. BI. *gr. life.*—*Biography*, writing lives.

xli. BOLE. *gr. a throw*. *Hyperbole*, a throw over or beyond; and thence, an expreſſion that exceeds the truth.

xlii. CARD, *gr. the heart.*---*Cardiac*, cordial, good for the heart.

xliii. CEDE or CEED, *lat. to go*. *Precede*, go before; *proceed*, go forward.

xliv. CHRON, *gr. time*. *Chronology*, diſcourſe upon the time when things happened, the diviſions of time.

xlv. CIRCUM---, *lat. round about*. *Circumſpect*, looking round about, watchful.

xlvi. CLAM, or CLAIM, *lat. cry.*---*Exclaim*, to cry out: *Exclamation*, crying out.

xlvii. ---CLE, *lat. ſmall.*---*Particle*, a ſmall part.

xlviii. CLUDE, to ſhut. *Exclude*, to ſhut out.

xlix. CO---, *lat.* See *con*. *Cohere*, ſtick together; *Cooperate*, operate together.

l. COL---, *lat.* See *con.*—*Collapſe*, fall together.

li. COM---, *lat.* See *con.*---*Commix*, mingle together.

lii. CON---, *lat. together*. *Condole*, mourn together. It is *col*---, before *l*; *com*---, before *b*, *m*, and *p*; *co*---, before *h* and before vowels; and *cor*---, before *r*.

liii. CONTRA---, *lat. againſt.*---*Contradict*, ſpeak againſt.

liv. COR---, *lat.* See *con.*---*Correlate*, relate together,

lv. CORPOR---, *lat. body*. *Corporal*, belonging to the body.

lvi. COUNTER---, *eng. againſt*. *Counteract*, act againſt.

lvii. ---CULE, *lat. ſmall*. *Animalcule*, a ſmall animal.

lviii. DE---, *lat. from*. *Depart*, part from: *negative*, *contrary*, or *un*---, as *Derange*, contrary to range: alſo *down* as *Depoſe*, put down: and *concerning* as *Demonſtrate*, ſhew concerning.

lix. DEC. or DECEM. *lat. ten.* *Decuple*, tenfold.

lx. DECA. *gr. ten.* *Decalogue*, ten commandments.

lxi. DEMI---, *fr. half.* *Demigod*, half or part a god.

lxii. DI---, *lat.* See *dis---.* *Divert*, turn from.

lxiii. DICT, *lat. ſpeak.* *Predict*, ſpeak of before.

lxiv. DIS---, *lat. negative, contrary*, or *from.* *Diſtruſt*, not to truſt; *disjoin*, to unjoin.

lxv. DIV. *lat. God.* *Divine*, belonging to God.

lxvi. ---DOM, *eng. place of authority; Kingdom*, place of the authority of a king: *State, Thraldom*, ſtate of thrall or ſlavery.

lxvii. DOMIN, *lat. rule.* *Predominate*, to bear rule over.

lxviii. DORSE, *lat. the back.* *Endorſe*, to put on the back.

lxix. DUCE, *lat. bring, lead*, or *draw.* *Reduce*, bring back.

lxx. E---, *lat. out of.* *Eject*, caſt out. It comes before *b, d, g, j, l, m, n, r*, and *v*: before *f* it is *ef---*: before other letters *ex---*.

lxxi. ---ED, *eng. poſſeſſed of.* *Illnatured*, poſſeſſed of an evil diſpoſition: alſo *abounding with*, as *daiſied*, abounding with *daiſies*.

lxxii. ---EE, *eng. to whom a thing is done*, as *Referee*, he to whom a thing is referred.

lxxiii. ---EER, *eng. that works at a thing.* *Engineer*, one that works at engines.

lxxiv. EF---, *lat.* See *e.---Efflux*, flowing out.

lxxv. EM---, *fr.* See *en.---Empower*, to give power to.

lxxvi. EN---, *fr. in*, but not in its negative ſenſe; it is moſt frequently uſed either redundantly before verbs, or to change ſubſtantives or adjectives into verbs, as *enrich*, to make rich, &c. It is *em---*, before *b, m*, and *p*.

lxxvii. ---EN, *eng.* with adjectives *to make*; *Harden* to make hard: with ſubſtantives *made of*; *oaken*, made of oak.

lxxviii. ---ENCE, *lat. The act, habit or ſtate.* *Confidence*, the act or habit of truſting another. The ſame primitives take *---ent* almoſt univerſally.

lxxix. ---ENSIS, *lat. one living in or coming from a place*; as *Etonenſis*.

lxxx. ---ENT, *lat. that does ſo*, as *regent*, that rules.

lxxxi. ENTER---, *fr. within*. *Entertain*, hold within, and thence, receive, treat, divert, hold in mind.

lxxxii. ---ER, *eng. he that does any thing*. *Thatcher*, he that thatches.

lxxxiii. ERGY, *gr. work*. *Periergy*, roundabout work.

lxxxiv. ---ESS, *eng. female*. *Lioneſs*, the female of the lion-kind.

lxxxv. ---ET, *eng. little*. *Circlet*, a little circle. It is a very frequent ending, when no ſign of derivation, as in *baſket*, *diet*, *quiet*, &c.

lxxxvi. EU, *gr. good* or *well*. *Euphony*, an agreeable ſound.

lxxxvii. EX---, *lat.* See *e---*. *Extend*, ſtretch out.

lxxxviii. EXTRA---, *lat. beyond*. *Extraordinary*, beyond what is common.

lxxxix. FAL, *lat. deceive*. *Fallible*, that may be deceived.

xc. FEIT, *fr. doing*. *Surfeit*, overdoing.

xci. FEROUS, *lat. bearing*. *Melliferous*, bearing or yielding honey.

xcii. FLAGR, *lat. burn*. *Conflagration*, burning together.

xciii. FLATE. *lat. blow*. *Inflate*, to blow into, to ſwell.

xciv. FLU, *lat. flow*. *Fluent*, flowing, plentiful.

xcv. FOR---, *eng.* an oblique negative not eaſily explained—*againſt*. *Forbid*, to give commands againſt. *Forſwear*, to deny upon oath; with *himſelf*, to ſwear falſely.

xcvi. FORE---, *eng. beforehand*. *Foretel*, to tell beforehand.

xcvii. FUGE, *lat. flee*. *Refuge*, place to flee again into.

xcviii. ---FUL, *eng. abounding with*. *Fruitful*, abounding with fruit.

xcix. ---FY, *lat. make*. *Purify*, make pure.

c. GE, *gr. the earth*. *Geography*, deſcription of the earth.

ci. GON, *gr. an angle or corner*. *Decagon*, a figure with ten angles.

cii. GREG. *lat. gather*. *Gregarious*, gathering into flocks.

ciii. ---HEAD, *eng. character*. *Godhead*, character of being God, Deity.

civ. HERE, *lat. to ſtick*. *Inhere*, ſtick or remain within.

cv. ---HOOD, *eng. character or abſtract quality*. *Manhood*, character or ſtate of man; *Falſehood*, character or quality of being falſe.

cvi. HYPER---, *gr. over and above*. *Hypermeter*, a thing above the required meaſure.

cvii. HYPO---, *gr. under*. *Hypotheſis*, an under poſition, or ſuppoſition.

cviii. ---IAN, *fr. one of a profeſſion*. *Phyſician*, one profeſſing medicine.

cix. ---IAC, *gr. belonging to*. *Cardiac*, belonging to the heart, cordial.

cx. ---IAD, *gr. belonging to*, as *Iliad*, belonging to Ilium.

cxi. ---IAST, *gr. that does*. *Encomiaſt*, one that gives encomiums.

cxii. ---IBLE. *lat. fit for* or *liable to*. *Viſible*, liable to be ſeen. See ---*able*. Words in ---*ible* take ---*ile* and ---*ition* or ---*tion*, with ſome change of their laſt letter. See alſo rule 176.

cxiii. ---IC, *gr.* relating to. *Dramatic* relating to plays: ---*ical* is ---*al* added to this termination, often uſeleſsly, except where ---*ic* ends a ſubſtantive, as *muſic*, *muſical*. ---*ical* ſometimes terminates an Engliſh adjective from a ſubſtantive in *y* or *e*, as *whimſical*, *farcical*.

cxiv. ---ICE, *lat. the quality in the abſtract*. *Juſtice*, the quality of being juſt.

cxv. ---ID, *lat. in ſuch a ſtate*. *Rancid*, in a ſtinking ſtate.

cxvi. JECT, *lat. caſt*. *Deject*, caſt down.

cxvii. IL---, *lat.* See *in---* ; *Illegal*, unlawful.

cxviii. ---ILE, *lat. of a character*. *Verſatile*, of a changing character; *like*, as *puerile*, like a child.

cxix. IM---, *lat.* See *in---*. *Implant*, fix within.

cxx. IN---, *lat.* with a ſubſtantive forms a verb, as *inflame* to fire, often metaphorically: with an adjective it ſignifies *not*, as *indecent*, not decent: with a verb *into* or *within*, as *inject*, to caſt into. It is *il---* before *l*; *im---* before *b*, *m*, and *p*; and *ir---* before *r*. See alſo *en---*.

cxxi. ---INE, *lat.* belonging to. *Divine*, belonging to God.

cxxii. INTER---, *lat. between* or *among*. *Intervene*, to come between.

cxxiii. INTRO---, *lat. within*. *Introduce*, lead within.

cxxiv. ---ION, *lat. the ſtate or act*. *Dominion*, the ſtate or act of ruling. R. 176, 195

cxxv. IR---, *lat.* See *in.---Irregular*, not regular.

cxxvi. ---ISH, *eng.* with a ſubſtantive, *like* or *belonging to*, as *ſheepiſh*, like a ſheep. In this ſenſe it is often contemptuous. With an adjective it ſignifies *a little ;* as *bluiſh*, a little blue. It alſo forms verbs, as *Repleniſh*, to fill again.

cxxvii. ---ISM, *gr. the act*. *Baptiſm*, act of baptizing.

cxxviii. ---ISM, *fr. gr. & lat. A mode of expreſſion peculiar to ſome language*. *Hebraiſm*, phraſe peculiar to or borrowed from the Hebrew.

cxxix. ---IST, *gr. one that acts*. *Baptiſt*, one that baptizes.

cxxx. ---ITY, *lat. abſtract quality*. *Purity*, quality of being pure.

cxxxi. ---IVE, *lat. that does*, forming an adjective. *Seductive* that ſeduces. This will be *---cive*, *---ive*, *---tive*, or *---ſive*, moſtly according to the law of *---tion*, &c.

cxxxii. ---JUNCT, *lat. joined*. *Adjunct*, joined to.

cxxxiii. JUVEN, *lat. youth*. *Juvenile*, belonging to youth.

cxxxiv. ---IZE, *gr. to make or act*. *Harmonize*, to make harmonious, or act in harmony.

cxxxv. ---KIN, *eng. ſmall*. *Lambkin*, ſmall lamb.

cxxxvi. LAPSE, *lat. fall*. *Collapſe*, fall together.

cxxxvii. LECT, *lat. pluck, pick or gather*. *Collect*, gather together.

cxxxviii. ---LESS, *eng. without*. *Senſeleſs*, without ſenſe.

cxxxix. LIBER, *lat. free*. *Liberate*, to ſet free.

cxl. LIBR, *lat. book*. Library, a place for, or collection of books.

cxli. ---LING, *eng. ſmall*. *Witling*, a ſmall wit, uſed by way of contempt.

cxlii. LITER, *lat. letter*. *Literary*, given to letters, or learning.

cxliii. LOG, *gr. word or reaſon.* *Logic*, relating to reaſon, the art of reaſoning.

cxliv. ---LY, *eng.* with ſubſtantives, *like*, as *manly*, like a man.

cxlv. MAL, *lat. evil.* *Malice*, the quality of intending evil.

cxlvi. MEL, *gr. or lat. honey.* *Melliferous*, bearing or yielding honey.

cxlvii. ---MENT, *fr. or eng.* *What is done; Judgement*, what is judged, the reſult of judging.

cxlviii. META---, *gr. change.* *Metaphraſe*, change of phraſe or words.

cxlix. METR. *gr. or lat. meaſure.* *Longimetry*, meaſure of length.

cl. MIS---, *eng. wrong.* *Miſdo*, do wrong.

cli. MIS, *gr. hatred.* *Miſanthropy*, hatred of man.

clii. MIT. *lat. ſend.* *Remit*, ſend back.

cliii. MONO, *gr. ſingle.* *Monotony*, a ſingle or uniform tone.

cliv. NATE, *lat. born.* *Innate*, born within.

clv. ---NESS, *eng. abſtract quality.* *Whiteneſs*, white in the abſtract, or conſidered as a thing.

clvi. NIHIL, *lat. nothing.* *Nihility*, nothingneſs.

clvii. NON, *lat. not.* *Nonperformance*, not performing.

clviii. NONYM, *gr. name.* *Anonymous*, without name.

clix. NUMER, *lat. number.* *Innumerable*, that are not liable to be numbered.

clx. OB---, *lat. againſt.* *Object*, to caſt againſt. It is *oc*--- before *c*; *op*--- before *p*.

clxi. OC---, *lat.* See *ob*---. *Occlude*, ſhut againſt.

clxii. ---OC, *eng. little.* *Hilloc*, a little hill.

clxiii. OCUL, *lat. eye.* *Ocular*, belonging to the eye.

clxiv. ---OID, *gr. nearly like.*---*Spheroid*, nearly like a ſphere.

clxv. OP---, *lat.* See *ob*---. *Oppoſe*, put againſt.

clxvi. ---OR, *lat. He that does a thing.* *Viſitor*, he that viſits.

clxvii. ---ORY, *lat. apt to do.* *Deluſory*, apt to delude.

clxviii. ---OSE, *lat. full of, or given to.* *Jocoſe*, given to jeſt.

clxix. ---OUS, *lat. full of.* *Zealous*, full of zeal.

clxx. OVER---, *eng. too much. Overdrive*, drive too hard; alſo *more than*, as *overmatch*, more than match.

clxxi. OUT---, *eng. excelling. Outſhining*, excelling in luſtre.

clxxii. OXY, *gr. Vinegar.*

clxxiii. PAROUS, *lat. bringing forth. Viviparous*, bringing forth alive.

clxxiv. PAST, *lat. taſte. Antepaſt*, foretaſte.

clxxv. PATH, *gr. feel. Apathy*, ſtate of being without feeling.

clxxvi. PED, *lat. foot. Pedal*, belonging to a foot.

clxxvii. PEND, *lat. hang. Pendant*, hanging.

clxxviii. PER---, *lat. through. Pervade*, paſs through.

clxxix. PERI---, *gr. round about. Periergy*, round about work, needleſs caution.

clxxx. PETR, *gr. and lat. Stone.*

clxxxi. PHON, *gr. ſound. Euphony*, agreeable ſound.

clxxxii. PLEN, *lat. full. Plenty*, fulneſs.

clxxxiii. PLEX, *lat. folded. Complex*, folded together.

clxxxiv. POLY, *gr. many. Polygon*, a figure with many angles.

clxxxv. PORT, *lat. carry. Tranſport*, to carry from land to land.

clxxxvi. POSE, *lat. put. Impoſe*, to put on, hence to deceive.

clxxxvii. POST---, *lat. after. Poſtexiſtence*, after-being.

clxxxviii. POVER, *fr. poor. Poverty*, poorneſs.

clxxxix. PRE---, *lat. before. Predict*, foretel.

cxc. PRETER---, *lat. beſide or paſt. Preterlapſed*, ſlidden paſt.

cxci. PRO---, *lat. forward. Produce*, bring forward.

cxcii. PSEUDO, *gr. falſe. Pſeudo-martyr*, a falſe martyr.

cxciii. PUER, *lat. child.*

cxciv. PUNCT, *lat. a point. Punctilious*, nice to a point.

cxcv. PUSIL, *lat. mean.*

cxcvi. QUADR, *lat. four. Quadrangle*, fourangled figure.

cxcvii. QUALI, *lat. ſuch.*

cxcviii. QUER, or QUIRE, *lat. ask*, or *seek*. *Enquire*, to ask; *query*, an asking.

cxcix. QUINQU, *lat. five*. *Quinquangular*, four-cornered.

cc. RADI, *lat. ray*. *Irradiate*, to adorn with rays.

cci. RADIC, *lat. root*. *Radical*, belonging to the root, original.

ccii. RANC, *lat. ill smell*. *Rancid*, ill-smelling.

cciii. RE—, *lat. again* or *back*. *Return*, turn back.

cciv. REG, *lat. rule*, *thence king*.

ccv. RETRO, *lat. backward*. *Retroaction*, action backward.

ccvi. —RIC, *eng. Office*, *authority*, in *Bishopric*.

ccvii. SCEND, *lat. to climb or go*. *Descend*, go down.

ccviii. SCRIBE, *lat. write*. *Subscribe*, write under.

ccix. SE—, *lat. out or from*. *Seclude*, shut from; *Select*, chuse out.

ccx. SEMI, *lat. half*. *Semicircle*, a half circle.

ccxi. SEPT. *lat. seven*.

ccxii. —SHIP, *eng. office*, *condition*. *Stewardship*, office of Steward; *Friendship*, condition or affection of friends.

ccxiii. SIMIL, *lat. like*. *Assimilate*, to make like to.

ccxiv. —SOME, *eng. apt or full of*. Not so strong as —*ful*. *Tiresome*, apt to tire.

ccxv. SOPH, *gr. wisdom*.

ccxvi. SPECT, lat. *view*, *look*. *Inspect*, look within.

ccxvii. —STER, eng. *that deals in or with a thing*, as whipster, punster, maltster, &c.

ccxviii. STRICT, STRINGE, or STRAIN, lat. *bind or hold*. *Restrict*, bind back or keep from.

ccxix. STRUCT, lat. *build or form*. *Destruction*, unbuilding.

ccxx. SUB—, lat. *under*. *Subscribe*, write under.

ccxxi. SUBTER—, lat. *under*. *Subterfluous*, flowing under.

ccxxii. SUME, lat. *take*. *Resume*, take back, or again.

ccxxiii. SUPER—, lat. *upon*. *Superstructure*, a building that is upon: *above*, *Supernatural*, above nature: *more than enough*, *Superpurgation*, more than sufficient purging.

ccxxiv. SUR—, fr. like ſuper. *Surcharge*, load too much.

ccxxv. SYL, gr. See *ſyn*---, *Syllogiſm*, a reaſoning together, the regular logical form of an argument.

ccxxvi. SYM---, gr. See *ſyn*---. *Symmetry*, agreeing in proportion, meaſuring together.

ccxxvii. SYN---, gr *together or agreeing*. *Synchronous*, agreeing in time. It is *ſyl*---, before *l*: and *ſym*---, before *b*, *m*, and *p*.

ccxxviii. TAIN or TEN, lat. *hold*. *Abſtain*, hold from.

ccxxix. TEND, lat. *ſtretch*. *Extend*, ſtretch out.

ccxxx. TERGE, lat. *wipe*. *Abſterge*, wipe away.

ccxxxi. TERR, lat. *earth*. *Terreous*, conſiſting of earth.

ccxxxii. TERRI, lat. *dread*. *Terrible*, dreadful.

ccxxxiii. ---TH, eng. *abſtract quality*. It generally changes the vowel ſound that precedes it, as *breadth* for *broadneſs*; *length* for *longneſs*; *heighth* now *height*, for *highneſs*.

ccxxxiv. THE, gr. *God*. *Atheiſt*, without God.

ccxxxv. TRACT, lat. *draw*. *Extract*, draw out.

ccxxxvi. TRANS, lat. *from one ſtate or thing to another*. *Tranſform*, turn from ſhape to ſhape.

ccxxxvii. TRI, gr. and lat. *three*. *Triple*, threefold.

ccxxxviii. ---TUDE, lat. *abſtract quality*. *Similitude*, likeneſs.

ccxxxix. VAC, lat. *empty*.

ccxl. VADE, lat. *go*. *Pervade*, go through.

ccxli. VENE, lat. *come*. *Advene*, come to.

ccxlii. VERT or VERSE, lat. *turn*. *Avert*, turn from.

ccxliii. VIDE or VISE, lat. *ſee*. *Viſible*, liable to be ſeen.

ccxliv. VIVE or VIT, lat. *live*. *Vital*, belonging to life.

ccxlv. UN---, eng. with an adjective, *not*, as *Unable*, not able; alſo with a participle, which it makes an adjective, as *Unpitied*, not pitied. It is ſeldom put before an active participle. With a verb it ſignifies *to act contrary*, ſo to *untie* is to *looſe*. *Un*--- is uſed to negative either words purely Engliſh, or ſuch as are only borrowed in the poſitive from other languages. It is alſo put before words ending in ---*neſs*; while thoſe in ---*ence*, ---*ice*, ---*tude*, and for the moſt part in *ty*, take *in*--- or its

*The uſe of theſe folding ſheets is ſhewn (clearly it is preſumed) in the preface, page vii. Such abbreviations as are there made uſe of,*
*full length here, as contractions might have puzzled, and ſometimes miſled, thoſe who have no aſſiſtance except the book.*
*When what follows any of the numbers ends with a daſh, the ſentence is incomplete, and to be ſupplied by what follows the ſame numb*
*turning to the key, ex 544, the uſe of this daſh may be ſeen. In that example is found*—Indian adj xxiv India—*Read then the who*
*To ſave room in the key, no numeral is admitted that conſiſts of above four letters: this is the reaſon of the omiſſions. Thus* xix *follow*
*tween* clxx *and* cxc, *for the ſame reaſon. There are many ſimilar omiſſions, but they need not occaſion any difficulty, becauſe the nu*

(i) A not an an becauſe followed by a conſonant. (ii) An not a becauſe followed by a vowel. (iii) A not an becauſe followed by h ſounded. (iv) A not an becauſe followed by the 8th ſound before another vowel. (v) A not an becauſe followed by the 10th ſound before another vowel. (vi) An not a becauſe followed by a ſilent h. (vii) Article indefinite becauſe the thing noted is unknown. (viii) Article definite becauſe the thing noted is known. (ix) Article indefinite becauſe followed by a plural of rule 256 uſed indefinitely (x) Without article being plural and unknown. (xi) Singular and without article rule 257. (xii) Article definite becauſe followed by an adverb in the—(xiii) Article definite becauſe the following ſubſtantive ſtands for all or any of the kind. (xiv) Article definite denoting a character in great perfection. (xv) Article definite denoting a character or ſtation after a proper name. (xvi) Article definite ſtanding for the poſſeſſive caſe of a pronoun. (xvii) Subſtantive common being a name given to every individual of that kind. (xix) Subſtantive proper without article being the name of one certain individual object. (xx) Subſtantive proper having an article before it by way of emphaſis. (xxi) Subſtantive proper having an article before it becauſe figuratively uſed. (xxii) Subſtantive proper having an article before it becauſe it is the name of a ſhip. (xxiv) Beginning with a capital becauſe derived from the proper name—(xxv) Therefore beginning with a capital. (xxvi) Beginning with a capital being a word that expreſſes a dignity and applied to a known individual. (xxix) Beginning with a capital becauſe it ſignifies Chriſt. (xxx) Beginning with a capital becauſe applied to God's Spirit. (xxxi) Beginning with a capital becauſe applied to God Almighty. (xxxv) Plural number ſpeaking of more than one and formed by adding *s* to the ſingular. (xl) Singular number ſpeaking of one only. (xli) Plural formed by changing the final *y* following a conſonant into *ies*. (xlii) Plural formed by adding *es* as the ſingular ends in one of the hiſſing ſounds r 261. (xliv) Plural formed by adding *es*, as the ſingular ends in *o* (xlv) Plural formed by changing *f* into *ves* (xlvi) Plural irregular r 263 from its ſingular—(xlix) Plural as ſingular r 264. (l) Always plural r 265. (li) Always ſingular r 265. (lii) Poſſeſſive caſe formed by adding an apoſtrophe and *s*. (liii) Nominative caſe. (liv) Poſſeſſive caſe plural, ending in *s* the apoſtrophe only is uſed. (lv) Poſſeſſive caſe formed by the apoſtrophe only; allowable in verſe after a hiſſing ſound in a ſubſtantive proper. (lvi) Becauſe the poſſeſſor is denoted by many terms th
to the laſt. (lvii) Pronoun firſt perſon pl
mon, ſingular number, neuter gender, non
proper, ſingular number, maſculine gende
noun 3rd perſon, ſingular number, maſculi
Subſtantive common, ſingular number, n
caſe. (lxiv) Pronoun 3rd perſon, ſingular,
(lxv) Subſtantive common, ſingular numb
tive caſe. (lxvi) Pronoun 3rd perſon, ſing
der, referring to—(lxix) in the form of a
Pronoun 3rd perſon plural referring to—(lx
lar number. (lxxv) Subſtantive common,
der, nominative caſe. (lxxx) Pronoun, 2nd
figuratively feminine gender. (xcii) figurat
Signifying the ſtate r 271 caſe 1. (xcv) Sig
Signifying a perſon familiarly, ludicrouſl
A mere emphaſis ludicrouſly uſed r 271 c
ſtantive diſcoverable by the connexion, n
following clauſe. (cii) ſubject of the fo
2nd perſon, ſingular number. (civ) Poſſe
ſeſſive caſe abſolute, coming after the th
Objective caſe. (cvii) Objective caſe beca
(cix) Subſtantive common, plural numbe
caſe. (cx) Object of the preceding verb.
being diſtant from the thing poſſeſſed whi
it follows the verb which being of the ſa
nominatives. (cxiv) Pronoun relative, ref
to.—(cxv) Subſtantive proper, ſingular,
caſe. (cxvi) Pronoun relative referring to thi
Pronoun interrogative referring to things
noun including both the relative and ante
preſſed ſubſtantive but ſtanding for wha
(cxxv) Pronoun relative, referring to any
or irrational. (cxxx) becauſe the interrog
(cxl) becauſe the interrogative pronoun is
interrogative pronoun is objective. (cxl
pronoun is not poſſeſſive. (cl) in prefere

*e there made uſe of, are moſt proper to be written on the ſlate, after the words have been written at length a few times. They are given at e book.*

*llows the ſame number in the Key. For example* (xxiv) Beginning with a capital becauſe derived from the proper name—*Now by —Read then the whole and the ſenſe is evident:* Indian adjective, beginning with a capital becauſe derived from the proper name India. s. *Thus* xix *follows* xvii, *becauſe* xviii *would have contained five letters. None of the numbers are admitted between* xxxv *and* xl, *nor be-culty, becauſe the numbers retained ſtand in their proper order.*

l by many terms the apoſtrophe and *s* are joined noun firſt perſon plural. (lix) Subſtantive com- neuter gender, nominative caſe. (lx) Subſtantive er, maſculine gender, nominative caſe. (lxi) Pro- lar number, maſculine gender referring to—(lxii) ſingular number, maſculine gender, nominative rd perſon, ſingular, neuter gender referring to— mon, ſingular number, feminine gender, nomina- un 3rd perſon, ſingular number, feminine gen- x) in the form of an addreſs r 257 caſe 5. (lxx) ral referring to--(lxxi) Pronoun 1ſt perſon, ſingu- bſtantive common, plural number, maſculine gen- (lxxx) Pronoun, 2nd perſon, plural number. (xci) ender. (xcii) figuratively maſculine gender. (xciv) 71 caſe 1. (xcv) Signifying a cauſe r 271 c 2 (xcvi) miliarly, ludicrouſly, or rudely r 271 c 3. (xcix) crouſly uſed r 271 caſe 4. (c) Standing for a ſub- y the connexion, namely for--(ci) referring to a ſubject of the following verb. (ciii) Pronoun, number. (civ) Poſſeſſive caſe relative. (cv) Poſ- coming after the thing poſſeſſed which is--(cvi) Objective caſe becauſe it follows a prepoſition. mon, plural number, neuter gender, nominative the preceding verb. (cxi) Poſſeſſive caſe abſolute thing poſſeſſed which is--(cxii) Nominative caſe, ich being of the ſame ſenſe as *am* admits of two ronoun relative, referring to rationals only, here proper, ſingular, feminine gender, nominative lative referring to things irrational, here to.--(cxix) referring to things rational, here to--(cxx) Pro- ne relative and antecedent. (cxxi) Having no ex- t ſtanding for what is expreſſed by the relative. ve, referring to any gender and to things rational becauſe the interrogative pronoun is nominative. rrogative pronoun is poſſeſſive. (cxli) becauſe the n is objective. (cxlv) becauſe the interrogative ſive. (cl) in preference to the prepoſition though referred to ſoon after by the relative. (cli) Seldom uſed for the poſſeſſive but allowed on account of the reference. (clii) Poetically ſingular though ſtrictly plural. (clv) Subſtantive proper, ſingular number, maſculine gender, poſſeſſive caſe. (clvi) Explanatory of the preceding pronoun. (clix) Pronoun compound put with the perſonal for emphaſis. (clx) Adjective added to the poſſeſſive caſe for emphaſis. (clxi) Pronoun compound, ſtanding for the objective caſe referring to what is likewiſe the ſubject. (clxv) Pronoun compound ſtanding for the nominative caſe. (clxx) Adjective comparative degree formed by adding *er* becauſe the poſitive is one ſyllable. (cxc) Adjective, comparative degree formed by prefixing *more*, becauſe the poſitive is more than one ſyllable and not excepted r 282. (cxci) Adjective, ſuperlative degree, formed by adding *eſt* becauſe the poſitive is one ſyllable. (cxcv) Adjective, ſuperlative degree, formed by prefixing *moſt* becauſe the poſitive is more than one ſyllable and not excepted r 282. (cc) Adjective comparative degree formed by adding *er*, becauſe the poſitive is two ſyllables ending in *y* (cci) Subſtantive proper, ſingular, neuter gender, nominative caſe (ccii) Subſtantive common, ſingular, neuter gender, poſſeſſive caſe. (cciv) Adjective, comparative degree, formed by adding *er* becauſe the poſitive is two ſyllables the latter accented. (ccv) Pronoun ſecond perſon ſingular. (ccvi) Adjective comparative formed by adding *er* becauſe the poſitive ends in *le* after a mute. (ccix) Adjective comparative degree irregular of--(ccx) Adjective ſuperlative degree formed by adding *eſt* though more than one ſyllable becauſe excepted r 282. (ccxi) Adjective ſuperlative degree irregular of--(ccxv) Adjective always comparative r 285. (ccxx) Adjective always ſuperlative r 285. (ccxl) Adjective dual ſingular ſignifying any of two r 286 caſe 2. (ccl) Adjective dual ſingular ſignifying none of two r 282 c 2. (ccli) Adjective plural re- 286 c 3. (cclv) Adjective dual r 286 c 2. (cclx) Adjective variable r 286 c 4 here plural. (ccxc) Subſtantive common, plural number, maſculine gender, poſſeſſive caſe. (ccc) Adjective variable r 286 c 4 here ſingular. (cccv) Adjective abſolute of the relative adjective--(cccx) Adjective abſolute without variation or addition. (cccl) Adjective abſolute by prefixing the definite article. (cccc) Adjective ſingular. (d) Subſtantive common, plural, feminine gender, nominative caſe. (di) Adjective uſed as a ſubſtantive r 288. (dii) Referring to the former word. (diii) Referring to the latter word. (div) Referring to the former

correſponding prepoſition *il*—, &c.

ccxlvi. UNDER—eng. *inferior*. It has other ſenſes, but they may be traced to that of the prepoſition.

ccxlvii. VOKE, lat. *call*. *Convoke*, call together.

ccxlviii. UP—, eng. *upwards*. *Uplift*, lift upwards.

ccxlix. —UPLE, lat. *fold*. *Sextuple*, ſixfold.

ccl. ---WARD, eng. *toward*. *Heavenward*, toward Heaven.

ccli. ---WISE, eng. *manner*. *Contrariwiſe*, in a contrary manner.

cclii. WITH---, eng. *againſt*. *Withſtand*, ſtand againſt: *back*; *with-hold*, keep back.

ccliii. ---Y, eng. *poſſeſſing or abounding with*. *Healthy*, poſſeſſing health; *woody*, abounding with wood.

ccliv. ---Y, fr. gr. or lat. *abſtract quality*. *Loyalty*, being loyal conſidered as a thing, loyalneſs. This termination may be *cy*, *ny*, *ſy*, *ty*, &c. without any very eaſy or certain rules to guide the mere Engliſh reader reſpecting their difference.

## EXERCISES.

(328) Apathy, aſtrology, archbiſhopric, billet, brotherhood, bruſhy, brutiſhneſs, burning-glaſs, coexiſtence, concentric, connate, conſanguinity, conſcientiouſneſs, confeſſion, conſolidation, conſtrictor, contemporary, conterraneous, contradictory, contravene, convocation, counterevidence, countermotion, decuple, depth, deflagrability, demi-wolf, diſparity, depend, durity. (329) Earldom, educe, ejectment, emollition, empoveriſh, endorſement, eradicative, evacuation, everliving, eulogy, facilitate, freedom, fainthearted, faithful, fallible, geometrician, grammaticaſter, giddyheaded, homeward, hyperbole, hypercritic. (330) Intervene, impend, interſtellar, juvenile, inthralment, lordling, mellifluous, metaphyſical, miſchance, malice, nameleſs, notwithſtanding, nullify, nominee, numerical, numſkull, oppoſition, oviparous, overmatch, outdo, outgrow, oxymel, packſaddle, palmiferous, perflate, perimeter, periphraſis. (331) Petrify, petticoat, philanthropy, philology, philoſopher, phonics, poſtdate, poſtage, poverty, preclude, precontract, preternatural, proclamation, propoſer, proſpect, providence, provocative, pruniferous, pſeudology, pſeudo-prophet,

publicſpirited, puerile, punctual, polyphoniſm, polytheiſt, punctuation, plenitude, pathetic, puniſhable, purification, purpliſh. (332) Puſillanimous, putter, patriarchal, projection, poverty, punſter, quadrangular, quadruple, qualify, quality, quantity, quaternity, queriſt, quicken, Quintiliana, quinquangular, quinquennial, quintuple, radiance, radiation, radicle, rancidity, retold, recur, rejuvenate, require, retouch, revelry, reverſible, radical, retroſpect, reviſe, revert, revive, ſapleſs, ſluggard, ſtrength, ſeclude, ſeducible. (333) Salopienſis, ſympathy, ſymphonious, ſeptennial, ſurvive, ſtewardſhip, ſubject, ſubterfuge, ſuperſcribe, ſynchroniſm, terraqueous, terrify, triennial, tablet, terrene, tritheiſt, theologian, tyrannize, troubleſome, tranſcur, tranſmit, tranſpoſe, trial, triform, trigonometry, trophied. (334) Unanſwerable, vacant, vacate, verboſe, viviparous, underwork, upraiſe, unanimity, vulgariſm, withdraw, worthleſsneſs, wooden, womanly, width, womanhead, wrongheaded, yearly, yellowiſh, youthful.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of INFLECTIVE ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, and the PARTS OF SPEECH.

### Of INFLECTIVE ETYMOLOGY.

242. INFLECTIVE ETYMOLOGY derives, from the *original* ſtate of a word, the ſeveral *ſecondary* ſtates adapted to ſyntax or the forming of ſentences; as, the poſſeſſive *George's* from the nominative *George*.

### Of SYNTAX.

243. SYNTAX teaches the right method of forming ſentences with reſpect to regimen, con-

cord, order, and completion. The practical plan requires ſuch a mixture of theſe two parts of grammar as is beſt adapted for teaching, which is attempted in the following chapters. But it is previouſly neceſſary to diſtinguiſh the parts of ſpeech.

## Of the PARTS OF SPEECH.

244. Every word in our language is of ſome of the following nine *ſorts*, which are alſo termed *The parts of ſpeech*: ARTICLE, SUBSTANTIVE, PRONOUN, ADJECTIVE, VERB, PREPOSITION, ADVERB, CONJUNCTION, INTERJECTION.

245. AN ARTICLE is a word ſet before a ſubſtantive to limit its ſignification.

Of this part of ſpeech there are only three words, namely, *a*, *an*, and *the*, and theſe are always Articles.

246. A SUBSTANTIVE is a *name*.

*Whatever will fill up the blank in any of the following ſentences, is a name, and therefore a ſubſtantive.*

| | |
|---|---|
| *A great* | *was ſpoken of.* |
| *Great* | *came to be mentioned.* |
| *A little* | *was ſpoken of.* |
| *Little* | *happened to be mentioned.* |
| *A good* | *was ſpoken of.* |
| *Good* | *happened to be mentioned.* |
| *A bad* | *was ſpoken of.* |
| *Bad* | *happened to be mentioned.* |
| *Good* | *pleaſe to hear me.* |

### EXERCISES.

(335) The world. (336) The grave, a poem. (337) Mendoza. (338) Stockport. (339) An enemy. (340) An

underſtanding. (341) Truth. (342) Goodneſs. (343) A war. (344) The ſun. (345) The moon. (346) Stars. (347) Abilities. (348) Thoughts. (349) Comfort. (350) Deſpair. (351) Galatians v, 20. (352) Paul, Jeſus Chriſt's ſervant.

247. A PRONOUN is a word uſed inſtead of a ſubſtantive.

There are about forty-nine words that are pronouns, namely, *I, my, mine, me, myſelf, thou, thy, thine, thee, thyſelf, he, his, him, himſelf, ſhe, her, hers, herſelf, it, its, itſelf, we, our, ours, us, ourſelf, ourſelves, ye, you, your, yours, yourſelf, yourſelves, they, their, theirs, them, themſelves, who, whoſe, whom, whoſoever, whoſe, whoever, which, what, whatſoever, whatever, that.*

EXERCISES.

(353) I the king. (354) He himſelf. (355) My couſin Ann. (356) We men. (357) Ye Engliſhmen. (358) My daughter Mary. (359) Our friends. (360) He, a grammarian. (361) The world itſelf. (362) Thou Thomas. (363) Whoſe book?

248. AN ADJECTIVE is a word that denotes ſome property.

*Whatever will fill up the blank in any of the following ſentences, is an adjective; except thoſe that end in —ed or —ing, coming from verbs without other alteration or addition.*

| | |
|---|---|
| *I ſpeak of* | *perſons.* |
| *I ſpeak of* | *things.* |
| *I ſpeak of* | *thing.* |
| *I ſpeak of* | *parts.* |

EXERCISES.

(364) You, the chief rulers. (365) He, a good maſter. (366) She, an excellent mother. (367) Great men. (368) Wiſe

counſellors. (369) A prudent wife. (370) Right faith. (371) They, all honorable men. (372) An aged horſe. (373) One mind. (374) That fine young colt. (375) This little pretty butterfly. (376) My old ſhabby hat itſelf. (377) Famous Newton himſelf. (378) Epheſians iv. 5.

(379) Avon, thy rural views, thy paſtures wild.—*Warton.*

(380) The thoughtleſs day, the eaſy night,
The ſpirits pure, the ſlumbers light.—*Gray.*

249. A VERB is a word which affirms that ſome perſon or thing is, or acts, or is acted upon, or is in ſome ſtate.

*Any word is a verb, that will fill up either of the following blanks, uſed in the ſame ſenſe. But ſometimes —eſt, —eth, or —ed is to be taken from it firſt, and ſometimes a change is to be made equal to leaving out* —ed, *as* bind *for* bound, think *for* thought.

*I am* ---*ing*.
*It is* ---*ing*.

*Alſo the words, am, art, is, are, was, waſt, were, wert, be, being, been, may, might, muſt, can, could, ſhall, ſhould, will, would, muſt, quoth.*

EXERCISES.

(382) He who ſerves God is the true wiſe man. *Engliſh Proverb.* (383) He is a proper man who hath proper conditions. *id.* (384) Fair words butter no parſnips. *id.* (385) Opportunity makes the thief. *id.* (386) Quick believers need broad ſhoulders. *id.* (387) Good counſel breaks no man's head. *id.* (388) Time undermines us all. *id.* (389) Debtors are liars. *id.* (390) Knowlege is no burthen. *id.* (390) He who blames grandees endangers his head; he who praiſes them muſt tell many a lie. *Italian Proverb.* (391) That is a wiſe delay, which makes the road ſafe. *Spaniſh Proverb.* (392) The wolves eat the poor aſs that has many owners. *id.* (393) The prodigal robs his heir, the miſer robs himſelf. (394) Cromwel preached, he prayed, he fought, he puniſhed, he rewarded. *Hume.*

(395) Inſidious, reſtleſs, watchful ſpider,
Fear no officious damſel's broom. *Littleton.*

(396) No ſigh, no murmur, the wide world ſhall hear. *Pope.*

(397) Fancy's keen prophetic glance
Sees the teeming month advance;
The verdant field, the foreſt gay,
The dappled ſlope, the tedded hay;
Sees the reddening orchard blow,
The harveſt wave, the vintage flow. *Warton varied.*

250. A PREPOSITION is a word employed to ſhew the relation of one perſon, thing, or action to another, and moſt generally placed before a ſubſtantive, pronoun, or verb.

*The following is a liſt of the* PREPOSITIONS *now in uſe: of theſe, what are marked thus* ‡ *are frequently* ADVERBS *likewiſe; what are marked thus* *, CONJUNCTIONS.

*Aboard* ‡, *above*, *about*, *acroſs* ‡, *adown* ‡, *after*, *againſt*, *along* ‡, *amid or amidſt*, *among or amongſt*, *around* ‡, *at*, *athwart* ‡, *before* *, *behind*, *below*, *beneath*, *beſide*, *between or betwixt*, *beyond*, *but* *, *by*, *down* ‡, *except* *, *for* *, *from*, *in*, *into*, *near or nigh* ‡, *notwithſtanding* *, *of*, *off* ‡, *on*, *over*, *round*, *ſince* ‡, *through*, *throughout*, *till* *, *to*, *toward or towards*, *traverſe* ‡, *under*, *underneath*, *until* *, *unto*, *up*, *upon*, *with*, *within*, *without*.

EXERCISES.

(398) It is the chief concern of wiſe men to retrench the evils of life by the reaſonings of philoſophy: it is the employment of fools to multiply them by the ſentiments of ſuperſtition. *Addiſon, Spectator, No.* 7. (399) Let your religion connect preparation for heaven with an honourable diſcharge of the duties of an active life. *Blair.* (400) Job xx, 16. (401) xxxviii, 2. (402) xxxix, 19. (403) xl. 2. (404) Pſalm

xix, 7, 8. (405) lxxvi. 1. (406) lxxvii. 5. (407) Romans xii. 9.

(408) Virtue without ſucceſs
Is a fair picture ſhewn by an ill light. *Dryden.*

(409) The Britiſh iſles ſhall ſend the noiſe
Acroſs the ocean to the ſhore. *Watts.*

(410) Along thy glades, a ſolitary gueſt,
The hollow-ſounding bittern guards its neſt:
Amidſt thy deſart walks the lapwing flies,
Tiring thy echoes with unvary'd cries. *Goldſmith.*

(411) Adown her ſhoulders fell her length of hair. *Dryden.*

251. AN ADVERB is a word added to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, to ſhew ſome circumſtance belonging to them.

*That is an* adverb, *which may be changed into a* phraſe *of the ſame meaning, with a* prepoſition *in the* firſt *place, an* adjective *with or without* article *in the* ſecond, *and a* ſubſtantive *in the* third: *So,* wiſely *is in a wiſe manner;* thus, *in this manner;* here *in this place;* hither, *to this place;* twice, *at two times, &c.*

*Many* adverbs *are formed from* adjectives *or* verbs *in* —ing, *or* —ed *by adding* —ly, *as* juſtly, lovingly, decidedly: *Alſo from* ſubſtantives *or* adjectives *with* a— *prefixed, as* abed, afreſh.

EXERCISES.

(412) I am fully ſatisfied. (413) He reads well. (414) You thrive amazingly. (415) I never count the company which I enter. *Rambler,* No. 59. (416) Very pleaſantly did the hours paſs: they moved ſwiftly along. *Biſhop Horne, a little varied.* (417) Oſtentation of religion is not the vice of the preſent age. Mankind in general are verging to the oppoſite extreme. *Dr. Prieſtley, Letters to a Young Man.* (418) They inſpire with thoſe celeſtial flames which ſhine ſo glorioufly in their works. *Dryden.* (419) Pſalm xxiii. 1. (420)

cxix. 86. (421) 1 Corinthians xv. 33. (422) James i. 16. (423) Job iv. 19, 20, 21. (424) v. 19. (425) xxxvii. 3. (426) Pſalm iii. 1. (427) v. 5. (428) xvii. 11. (429) lxxxviii. 6. 7. (430) cv. 30. (431) cxii. 7. (432) Epheſians iii. 21.

(433) Slander, that worſt of poiſons ever finds
An eaſy entrance to ignoble minds. *Hervey.*

(434) Fir'd with a thouſand raptures I ſurvey
Eridanus through flowery meadows ſtray,
The king of floods! that rolling o'er the plains,
The towering Alps of half their moiſture drains.
*Addiſon.*

(435) Contentment, parent of delight,
So much a ſtranger to our ſight,
Say, goddeſs, in what happy place,
Mortals behold thy blooming face? *Green.*

252. A CONJUNCTION is a word that connects either ſentences or ſimilar words.

*The following are conjunctions, Again* ‡, *alſo, although, and, as, becauſe, before, both, but, either, elſe, except, farther, for, however, if, indeed* ‡, *leſt, moreover, neither, nevertheleſs, nor, notwithſtanding, or, ſave, ſince, ſo* ‡, *ſtill* ‡, *than, that, therefore* ‡, *though, till, unleſs, until, whereas, wherefore* ‡, *whether, yet.*

## EXERCISES.

(436) God will, one time or another, make a difference between the good and the evil. But there is little or no difference made in this world. *Watts.* (437) Wealth cannot confer greatneſs, for nothing can make that great, which the decree of nature has ordained to be little. The bramble may be placed in a hot-bed, but can never become an oak. *Johnſon, Rambler*, No. 58. (438) Many of my enemies, who would not only diſcountenance, but even deſtroy me, if they were able, I am far from thinking very ill of. *Dr. Prieſtley, Letters to a Young Man.* (439) The eldeſt was a termagant imperious wench: ſhe uſed to rantipole about the houſe, pinch the chil-

dren, kick the ſervants, and torture the cats and dogs.—*Arbuthnot.* (440) The good man and woman are long ſince in their graves, who uſed to ſit and plot the welfare of us their children, while, perhaps, we were ſometimes laughing at the old folks at another end of the houſe. *Spectator.* (441) We may aſſure ourſelves, that the great Author of nature will not always be as one who is indifferent to any of his creatures. *id.* (442) Ehſter i. 5, 6. (443) Job vi. 6. (444) xix. 25. (445) xxi. 23—26. (446) xxxiv. 10—12. (447) xxxviii. 11. (448) Pſalm xviii. 21. (449) cxix. 83. (450) cxxxix. 14. (451) Jeremiah x. 10—13. (452) xxiv. 2, 3.

(453) My thoughts look inward, and forget
The ſounding names of high and great. *Watts.*

(454) The farmer's gooſe,
Grown fat with corn, and ſitting ſtill,
Can ſcarce get o'er the barn-door ſtill,
And hardly waddles forth to cool
Her belly in a neighbouring pool. *Swift.*

(455) Bread, butter, potatoes, cole, cabbages, roots,
Pears, oranges, apples, and all ſorts of fruits.
*Geddes, Macaronic Epiſtle.*

(456) The turbot ſo tender, the flounder ſo flat,
The whiting ſo fair, and the mackarel ſo fat,
The ſmall-bodied ſmelt and the minikin ſprat. *id.*

(457) Six wings he wore, to ſhade
His lineaments divine; the pair that clad
Each ſhoulder broad, came mantling o'er his breaſt
With regal ornament: the middle pair
Girt like a ſtarry zone his waiſt, and round
Skirted his loins, and thighs with downy gold,
And colours dipp'd in heaven: the third, his feet
Shadow'd from either heel with feather'd mail,
Sky-tinctur'd grain! Like Maia's ſon he ſtood,
And ſhook his plumes, that heavenly fragance fill'd
The circuit wide. *Milton, Paradiſe Loſt.* v. 377, *&c.*

(458) Fruit of all kinds, in coat
Rough, or ſmooth rind, or bearded huſk, or ſhell,
She gathers; tribute large! and on the board
Heaps with unſparing hand: for drink, the grape
She cruſhes (inoffenſive muſt) and meathes
From many a berry; and from ſweet kernels preſs'd,

She tempers dulcet creams; nor theſe to hold
Wants her fit veſſels pure: then ſtrews the ground
With roſe, and odours from the ſhrub, unfum'd.
*id. ibid.* 341 *etc.*

(459) Celeſtial orb! whoſe powerful ray
Opes the glad eyelids of the day,
Whoſe influence all things own;
Praiſe him, whoſe courts effulgent ſhine
With light as far excelling thine,
As thine the paler moon.
Ye glittering planets of the ſky,
Whoſe lamps the abſent ſun ſupply,
With him the ſong purſue;
And let himſelf ſubmiſſive own,
He borrows from a brighter ſun
The light he lends to you. *Merrick.*

(460) Foe to loud praiſe, and friend to learned eaſe,
Content with ſcience in the vale of peace,
Calmly he look'd on either life, and here
Saw nothing to regret, or there to fear. *Pope on Fenton.*

253. AN INTERJECTION is a ſudden outcry, not regularly connected with the ſentence in which, or near which, it occurs.

*The interjections commonly occurring in Engliſh writers are theſe: Ah! aha! alas! alack! bo! eigh! fie! fugh! goodnow! gramercy! ha! heighho! hey! hey-day! hip! hiſt! la! lo! mum! O! oh! piſh! pſhaw! pugh! ſoho! tuſh! tut! welladay! whiſt!*

*Alſo words of other kinds when uſed in an unconnected manner, as behold! peace! ſoft! ſtrange! to enumerate which is perhaps impoſſible, certainly needleſs.*

EXERCISES.

(461) Maſter, mum! and gaze your fill. *Shakeſpeare.*

(462) She frowned and cried Piſh! when I ſaid a thing that I ſtole. *Spectator.* (463) Tut, tut! here's a mannerly forbearance. *Shakeſpeare.* (464) A very filthy fellow: how odiouſly he ſmells of his country garlick! fugh! how he ſtinks.

of Spain. *Dryden, Don Sebaſtian.* (464) Hiſt, hiſt, ſays another that ſtood by, away, doctor; for here's a whole pack of diſmals coming. *Swift.* (465) Job xxxix. 25. (466) Pſalm viii. 9. (467) xxxv. 21. (468) xlviii. 4.

(469) Alas! poor Protheus, thou haſt entertain'd
A fox to be the ſhepherd of thy lambs. *Shakſpere.*

(470) Gramercy, lovely Lucius, what's the news. *id.*

(471) But oh, the madneſs of my high attempt
Speaks louder yet. *Dryden, Spaniſh Friar.*

## CHAP. IX.

## Of ARTICLES.

254. THE article *a* comes before *conſonants*, and before the *eighth* or *tenth* found when followed by *vowels*: before *other vowels* and *ſilent h* we uſe *an*.

### EXAMPLES.

(472) *It is a certain ſign of an ill heart to be inclined to defamation.* Steele, Spec. No. 412.

(473) *A habit of obſervation refines our feelings.* Smellie. (474) *The eſtabliſhment of a uniformity of ſpeech, as well as manners, will gradually take place.* Sheridan, Art of Reading. (475) *Virtue was a uſeleſs incumbrance to the great, whom the want of it could not debaſe.* Sir Brook Boothby. (476) *The more intelligent part of a congregation might find a uſeful and intereſting employment in aſſiſting the teacher.* Mrs. Barbauld. (477) —*To have beſtowed, at laſt, on that ſavage country the face of a European ſettlement.* Hume. (478) *It is a very common obſervation, that ſuch a one is very good-natured, but very paſſionate.* Steele, Spec. No. 438. (478) *An honeſt phyſician leaves his patient, when he*

*can contribute no further to his health.* Temple. (479) *I am convinced, my dear father, added he, with a hypocritical accent.* Dr. Moore, Zeluco.

(480) *Thou, alas! deserv'st a happier fate.* Pope.

(481) *A universe of death! which God by curse*
*Created evil.* Milton, Paradise Lost, b. II. 622.

(482) *From the cheerful ways of men*
*Cut off; and for the book of knowledge fair*
*Presented with a universal blank.* Ibid. III. 46.

(483) *I saw when, at his word, the formless mass*
*This world's material mould, came to a heap.* Ibid. 708.

(484) *A happy rural seat of various view.* ib. IV. 247.

## EXERCISES.

(485) An spacious horizon is a image of liberty, where the eye has room to roam abroad. (486) —Passing from considering ourselves to an union with God. *Taylor.* (487) When I consider her carriage I cannot think well of such an one. (488) I live in the corner of an vast unfurnished house: my family consists of an steward, a groom, a helper in the stable, an footman, and a old maid.

(489) Denied what every wretch obtains of fate,
A humble roof, and a obscure retreat.

(490) Quoth Ralpho, Honour's but an word
To swear by, only in an lord;
In others it is but an huff
To vapour with instead of proof.

255. *The* is called the *definite* article, and comes before the names of things that are *known*: *a* and *an* are *indefinite*, and come before the names of things that are *unknown*.

## EXAMPLES.

(491) *A mastiff of true English blood*
*Lov'd fighting better than his food.*

* * * *

*Clubs and ſtaffs from every ſide*
*Rebounded from the maſtiff's hide.* Gay.

(492) *Thus the majeſtic mother of mankind,*
*To her own charms moſt amiably blind,*
*On the green margin innocently ſtood*
*And gaz'd indulgent on the cryſtal flood;*
*Survey'd the ſtranger in the painted wave,*
*And ſmiling, prais'd the beauties which ſhe gave.* Young.

(493) *The beſt, the braveſt of my ſons are ſlain.* Pope.

(494) *A ruſſet mantle, like a ſwain, he wore,*
*And thought of crowns and buſy courts no more.* Collins.

## EXERCISES.

(495) I aſked him whether he was the Italian, the Spaniard, or the Swiſs; for I could perceive that he was the foreigner.

(496) In a chief church of Soloturn there is the image of God the Father, as the old man with the great black beard, having our Saviour on his knees, and the pigeon over his head.

(497) On a glad earth, a golden age renew,
And thy great father's path to heaven purſue.

(498) ——— If any happy eye
This roving wanton ſhall deſcry,
Let a finder ſurely know
Mine is a wag.

256. The indefinite article can only be uſed before ſubſtantives in the *ſingular* number, or that ſignify *one thing*. Hence thoſe in the *plural*, or that ſignify *more than one*, when the things are *unknown*, have no articles before them. Yet the words *few* and *many* may have, and *dozen*, *hundred*, *thouſand*, *million*, muſt have an indefinite article when uſed indefinitely.

## EXAMPLES.

(499) *I have travelled a dozen miles together under them.* Raleigh.

(500) *Revelations* II. 20.

(501) *A hundred altars in her temple ſmoke.* Dryden.

(502) *In human works though labour'd on with pain*
*A thouſand movements ſcarce one purpoſe gain.* Pope.

EXERCISES.

(503) A men of a lively imaginations are often ſubject to a violent paſſions. (504) Though he regulates himſelf by juſtice he finds thouſand inſtances for generoſity and compaſſion. (505) We cannot lodge and board dozen or fourteen gentlewomen.

257. Singular ſubſtantives are uſed without articles, Firſt, When they are put for all of that kind, as *man* for *all men*. This mode of ſpeaking does not affect many words, and is ſeldom uſed where it does take place. Secondly, When they are put for either ſingular or plural in a very looſe ſenſe, as, "Haling to *priſon*, *man*, *woman*, and *child*." Thirdly, When they expreſs indefinitely things that have no plurals, as *gold*, *money*, *wheat*, *faith*, *eternity*. Fourthly, When they are proper names of perſons or places, which will be further noticed in the next chapter. Fifthly, When a perſon or thing is called upon by name, as, "*Father*, forgive them." "*Sun*, ſtand thou ſtill." —Certain ſubſtantives, pronouns, and adjectives likewiſe make the articles unneceſſary, which will be noticed in their proper place.

EXAMPLES.

(506) *If virtuous reſolution is to be expected of man, it is to be expected of youth.* Prieſtley, Defences of Unitarianiſm, 1788. (507) *While a man is learning to fence, he practices both on friend and foe.* Addiſon. (508) *Matthew* ii. 11. (509) 2 *Chron.* xxvi. 17.

EXERCISES.

(510) In like manner ſhould the reaſon be perpetually upon its guard againſt the paſſions. *Spec.* No. 408. (511) Obedi-

ence comprehendeth the whole duty of a man. *Dilworth.* (512) The honour is not made of the gold or a ſilver. (513) A Chriſtian, forſake thou a father and a mother ſooner than the doctrine of Chriſt.

258. Beſide its uſe in rule 255, the definite article ſtands for the poſſeſſive caſe of pronouns, as, He looked him in *the face*, for in *his face*;—to denote any character in great perfection, as, He was *the ſcholar*;—to expreſs a character, ſtation, or profeſſion after a proper name, as, John *the Painter*.—It alſo marks a ſpecies of animals, vegetables, &c. in the abſtract, like *man* for *all men*, as, *The fox* is a crafty creature. Laſtly, it ſometimes comes before the comparative and ſuperlative degree of adverbs, by way of emphaſis, as, *The more* I hear, *the better* I approve: I like this *the leaſt* of any.

## EXAMPLES.

(514) *The longer ſin hath kept poſſeſſion of the heart, the harder it will be to drive it out.* Duty of Man. (515) *It is a conſtitution the moſt adapted of any to the poverty of theſe countries.* Addiſon on Italy. (516) *We are ſurpriſed at not finding him the great man.* (517) *Coloſſians* iv. 14.

(518) *Our decrees,*
*Dead to inflidion, to themſelves are dead:*
*And liberty plucks juſtice by the noſe.* Shakeſpere.

(519) *The greedy lioneſs the wolf purſues,*
*The wolf the kid, the wanton kid the browſe.* Dryden.

(520) *The raven once in ſnowy plumes was dreſt,*
*White as the whiteſt dove's unſully'd breaſt.* Addiſon.

EXERCISES.

(521) More closely I consider the character of my friend, either a head or a heart, more he appears educated gentleman. (522) A fox was fixed upon by Jesus Christ, as the emblem of Herod tetrarch.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES

ON ARTICLES;

CHIEFLY FROM AUTHORS.

(523) His friend on whose assistance he most relied, either proves false and forsakes him, or looks on him with an useless pity, and cannot help him. *Rogers.* (524) Such an one who has the public administration, acts like the representative of his Maker. *Addison.* (525) God Almighty hath given reason to a man to be a light unto him. *Hobbes.* (526) He said, I am vexed to the death. (527) She gave him a orange and a apple. (528) Mark ii. 17. (529) Acts xiv. 28.

(530) Who breaks a butterfly upon a wheel? *Pope.*

---

(531) Then shall we shine in heavenly rays,
In light of perfect holiness.

(532) Redeem'd with precious blood
Of God the Father's only son.

## CHAP. X.

## Of SUBSTANTIVES.

259. SUBSTANTIVES are either *common* or *proper* names. Common names are such as are given to all things of one kind, as *man*, *town*, *nation*. Proper names are given to one individual only, or if to more than one, it is by accident,

and not to ſhew their kind; ſuch are, *James*, *Stockport*, *England*. Proper names have no articles before them, except by way of emphaſis, as, Hear how *a Milton* ſang—when figuratively uſed, as *a Nero* for a cruel perſon—and the names of ſhips and rivers, and mountains when plural, as *The Victory*, *The Thames*, *The Alps*.

EXAMPLES.

(533) *John* xi. i. (534) 2 *Timothy* iv. 20. (535) *With what indignation do I hear an Ovid, a Cicero, or a Rabutin, complain of their misfortunes.* Goldſmith.

(536) *A Daniel come to judgement! yea a Daniel!* Shakſpere.

(537) *Here noble Surrey felt the ſacred rage*
*Surrey—the Granville of a former age.* Pope.

(538) *O'er the glimmering wave he hied him,*
*Where the Burford rear'd her ſail,*
*With three thouſand ghoſts beſide him,*
*And in groans did Vernon hail.* Glover.

EXERCISES.

(539) When the Edward aſcended the throne, he was one of the handſomeſt men in an England, and perhaps in an Europe. (540) Henry VII. had the appellation of Engliſh Solomon. (541) Merſey though a ſmall river at a Stockport becomes navigable long before it empties into the ſea. (542) It was a ſhocking ſcene when Royal George with all her crew, inſtantaneouſly ſunk and was loſt. (543) Alps divide an Italy from a France and a Switzerland: Appenines run through the middle of that fertile country.

260. Every proper name ſhould begin with a capital. N. B. Beſide the directions reſpecting capitals in rules 197, 214, 219, they are placed at the beginning of words expreſſing dignities,

profeſſions or trades, when applied to individuals; —or ſignifying God, or his Spirit, or Jeſus Chriſt; —or derived from proper names;—at the beginning of ſentences introduced from a writer or ſpeaker, and included in other ſentences;—— and the pronoun *I* and interjection *O* muſt always be capitals. Except in theſe caſes, capitals are improper: remarkable words indeed may be marked with them, but are better printed in the Italic character, or in manuſcript daſhed under. Such as are of uncommon importance may be printed wholly in capitals, and doubly daſhed in writing.

## EXAMPLES.

(544) *He traded to the remoteſt quarters of the globe, and a cargo of Indian ſpices and of Greek books was frequently imported in the ſame veſſel.* Gregory. (545) *Mr. Weſley and his followers oppoſe ſome of the Calviniſtic doctrines.* Guthrie. (546) *The Americans deranged all the plans of the Britiſh general.* id. (547) *The King, the Duke of York, and George Johnſon, Eſquire.* (548) *Our Saviour could continue a whole night in prayer to God.* Dr. Prieſtley. (549) *We believe in the Holy Ghoſt, that is, We believe every thing that the ſcriptures tell us of the Holy Spirit of God.* Gilpin. (550) *Iſaiah* i. 2.

## EXERCISES.

(551) One cannot but obſerve the judgement of homer In his Character of helen. (552) Some gentlemen Were talking of The civil Wars in england, when One of them Suddenly aſked what Was the Value Of A jewiſh Shekel:—Being Interrogated While The Whole Train was freſh in His memory, he Said, the Civil War brought To his Mind The Death of king charles, the death of charles That of our ſaviour, and This Made Him think Of The Thirty Pieces Of Silver, Which He Suppoſed were ſhekels, For Which judas Betrayed him. (553) It is i, hannibal, Who now aſk a peace; i aſk it becauſe i Think

It expedient For My country; and Thinking It expedient i will Inviolably maintain it. (554) Who, ſir, Believe More concerning Frequent interpoſitions of deity than the calviniſts? (555) That he Should Save Men by The man chriſt jeſus is no way unſuited to The eſtabliſhed Order of his providence. (556) The crucified ſaviour was appointed of god To Be The judge of Quick and Dead. (557) Whereas john luckleſs of ſtockport in The County of cheſter, ſlater, hath this day aſſigned over his Eſtate And effects to richard ſure of cheadle, taylor, &c. (558) He then Led Me to The Higheſt pinnacle Of the Rock, and placing me On the Top Of it, caſt thy eyes eaſtward, ſaid he, and tell me what thou Seeſt.

## Of the SINGULAR and PLURAL NUMBERS.

261. THE *ſingular number* ſpeaks of *one* thing; the *plural* of *more* than one. The plural is generally formed from the ſingular by adding *s*; or, if the ſingular end in *ch* ſounded ſoft as in rule 121, *s*, *sh*, or *x*, by adding *es*. Alſo —*y* ſingular after a conſonant forms —*ies* plural; —*o* ſingular —*oes* plural.

### EXAMPLES.

(559) *As one who has no intereſts in this world, as one who is haſtening to the object of all his wiſhes, and conceives hopes from his decays and infirmities.* Steele, Spec. No. 42. (560) *A great eſtate hath great croſſes.* Taylor. (561) —*To make both ſexes appear in their conduct what they are in their hearts.* Steele. Spec. No. 4. (562) *The red and white potatoes are the moſt common eſculent roots now in uſe, and were originally brought from Virginia into Europe.* Miller. (563) *Her recoveries were often as ſudden as her decays.* Addiſon.

(564) *All human things are ſubject to decay,*
*And, when Fate ſummons, monarchs muſt obey.* Dryden.

### EXERCISES.

(565) Wiſdom is that which makes men judge what are the beſt end, and what the beſt mean to attain them. (566) Lifting

up one of my ſaſhs I caſt many a wiſtful melancholy look towards the ſea. (567) Let us not preſume to condemn thing as follys and toies becauſe we know not their uſe. (568) In the great plagues there were ſeen, in divers ditchs and low groundes about London many toades that had tailes three inch long.

262. Words ending in *f*, *ff*, or *fe*, follow the general rule (261), except the following which change thoſe endings into —*ves* in the plural: *Calf* pl. *calves*, *elf*, *half*, *knife*, *life*, *leaf*, *loaf*, *maſtiff*, *ſheaf*, *ſhelf*, *ſelf*, *ſtaff*, *thief*, *wife*, *wolf*.

EXAMPLES.

(569) *The king hath ſent to know the nature of your griefs.* Shakſpere. (570) *Job* xxx. 6.

(571) *I with green turfs would grateful altars raiſe.* Dryden.

(572) *The reaper fills his greedy hands,*
*And binds the golden ſheaves in brittle bands.* id.

(573) *On Garrway cliffs*
*A ſavage race, by ſhipwreck fed,*
*Lie waiting for the founder'd ſkiffs,*
*And ſtrip the bodies of the dead.* Swift.

(574) *Soon as Ulyſſes near th' incloſure drew,*
*With open mouths the furious maſtives flew.* Pope.

EXERCISES.

(575) The ſacred prieſts with ready knifes bereave
The beaſt of life.

(576) Thiefs for their robbery have authority
When judges ſteal themſelf.

(577) What countleſs grieves o'erwhelm the ſuffering mind!

263. Many words, following the rules of the languages from which they are derived, form their plurals in an irregular manner; as, from the TEUTONIC, *brother* in a figurative ſenſe has its

plural *brethren*, in its proper ſenſe regularly *brothers*; *child*, *children*; *cow* ſometimes *kine*, but often regular; *die* of a gameſter *dice*, *die* of a coiner being *dies*; *foot*, *feet*; *gooſe*, *geeſe*; *louſe*, *lice*; *mouſe*, *mice*; *man*, *men*; *ox*, *oxen*; *penny* in reckoning a ſum *pence*, it is regular in ſpeaking of pieces of that value; *pock*, *pox*, which latter is uſed in the ſingular for the diſeaſe; *tooth*, *teeth*; *woman*, *women*;—from the HEBREW, *cherub*, *cherubim*; *ſeraph*, *ſeraphim*;—from the GREEK, *Ajax*, *Ajaces*; *criterion*, *criteria*; *ellipſis*, *ellipſes*; *hypoſtaſis*, *hypoſtaſes*; *hypotheſis*, *hypotheſes*; *parentheſis*, *parentheſes*; *periphraſis*, *periphraſes*; *phaſis*, *phaſes*; *phenomenon*, *phenomena*; *theſis*, *theſes*;—from the LATIN, *arcanum*, *arcana*; *colloquium*, *colloquia*; datum, *data*; dentellus, *dentelli*; *deſideratum*, *deſiderata*; *dogma*, *dogmata*, often regular; *effluvium*, *effluvia*; erratum, *errata*; *focus*, *foci*; *genus*, *genera*; *genius*, when uſed for a fancied being, a kind of fairy, *genii*, for ability or an ingenious perſon, regular; geminus, *gemini*; literatus, *literati*; magus, *magi*; *medium*, *media*; minutia, *minutiæ*; *radius*, *radii*; ſenſoriolum, *ſenſoriola*; *ſtamen*, *ſtamina*; *ſtratum*, *ſtrata*; villus, *villi*;—from the FRENCH, *beau*, *beaux*; *Monſieur*, *Meſſieurs*, which is ſubſtituted in Engliſh both for the plural of Mr. and Sir;—from the ITALIAN, *banditto*, *banditti*. It muſt be obſerved, that in this and all other enumerations, compound and derivative words are not mentioned; becauſe they follow their primitives, unleſs ſomething be remarked to the contrary. In the above, thoſe ſingulars that are printed in the Roman character are ſeldom or never uſed in Engliſh.

## EXAMPLES.

(578) *Too many churchmen are enemies to free inquiry.* Watſon, Biſhop of Llandaff, Charge, 1791. (579) *The Egyptians and Hebrews philoſophized much concerning God and concerning Genii.* Weſley. (580) *The acidulæ or mineral ſprings emit a greater quantity of their minerals than uſual.* Woodward, Natural Hiſtory. (581) *The Hottentots train their oxen to war.* Smellie. (582) *Theſe aſſemblies are called colloquia: Each colloquium has its preſident.* Coxe, Travels in Switzerland. (583) *There are very many errata.* Monthly Review Enlarged, vol. i. p. 119. (584) *With reſpect to the minutiæ of national character and cuſtoms.* ibid, p. 193. (585) *I have ſeen, in various countries, hills formed of looſe ſand, in which were ſtrata almoſt entirely compoſed of ſea-ſhells, mixed with ſand; and in theſe ſtrata I have found pudding-ſtones formed of thoſe ſhells inſtead of gravel.* De Luc to Hutton, ibid vii. p. 212. (586) *The population and wealth of a kingdom conſidered as criteria of a good government.* ibid, vol. iv. p. 226. (587) *Like the church, you admit of no ſhades of reſiſtance to your dogmata.* Sir Brooke Boothby. (588) *With all its qualifying doubts and palliating parentheſes.* id. (589) *Our poet was a ſtoic philoſopher, and all his moral ſentences are drawn from the dogmas of that ſect.* Dryden. (590) *All theſe ſects are brethren to each other.* Swift. (591) *Comparing two men in reference to one common parent, it is eaſy to form the idea of brothers.* Locke. (592) *Hence his minute deſcriptions of cows, horſes, dogs.* Weſley. (593) *Boldneſs, like the bravoes and banditti, is ſeldom employed, but upon deſperate ſervices.* Government of the Tongue. (594) *Eph.* vi. 1.

(595) *Or drive afield the tardy kine.* T. Warton.

(596) *Women are made as they themſelves would chuſe.* Garth.

## EXERCISES.

(597) It would very much contribute to clear a point in debate, were diſputants firſt of all to agree on certain datums. (598) Brutes and mans have their ſenſoriolums, or little ſenſoriums. (599) The image here given of the Ajaxes is very lively and exact. (600) The various periphraſiſes and circum-

locutions by which Homer expreſſes the ſingle act of dying. (601) You will become the delight of nine ladies out of ten; and the envy of ninety-nine beaus out of a hundred. (602) Milton was one of the greateſt genii of his time. (603) In the ſmall-pox, the pocks or puſtules muſt be opened when they begin to die. (604) A young ſtranger held the dies and had already won four times. (605) Such variety of dice, made uſe of by Wood in ſtamping his money, makes the diſcovery of counterfeits more difficult.

(606) Regions they paſs'd, and mighty regencies
Of ſeraphs and of potentates, and thrones.

(607) If theſe effluviums, which upward tend
Becauſe leſs heavy than the air, aſcend;
Why do they ever from their height retreat?

(608) Theſe two are brethren*, Adam, and to come
Out of thy loins. *Milton, P. L. b.* xi. *l.* 454.
* Cain and Abel.

264. The words *ſheep, deer, ſwine, hoſe, congeries, ſeries, ſpecies,* are the ſame in both numbers: Alſo *head, pair, yoke, couple,* and ſome other words of that kind, when followed by *of* and a ſubſtantive, or when they are underſtood.

EXAMPLES.

(609) *He intendeth the care of ſpecies or common natures.* Brown. (610) *When Innocent deſired the Marquis of Carpio to furniſh thirty thouſand head of ſwine, he could not ſpare them; but thirty thouſand lawyers he had at his ſervice.* Addiſon. (611) Pſalm c. 3.

(612) *He croſs-examin'd both our boſe,*
*And plunder'd what we had to loſe.* Butler.

EXERCISES.

(613) My ſheeps hear my voice. (614) You have beaten my men, and killed my deers.

(615) With many a deadly grunt and doleful ſqueak,
Poor ſwines! as if their very hearts would break.

265. Some things are not capable of being increaſed or diminiſhed in number, and conſequently their names are always ſingular, as *braſs*, *earth*, *air*, *goodneſs*, &c. and proper names except when uſed figuratively, or when there happens to be more than one of the ſame name. Other words, though not for ſo plain a reaſon, are always plural, as *alms*, *annals*, *arms* (weapons), *aſhes*, *aſſets*, *belles-lettres*, *bellows*, *betters* (ſuperiors), *billiards*, *bowels*, *breeches* (clothing), *calends*, *clothes*, *colours* (flag), *compaſſes*, *creſſes*, *dregs*, *entrails*, *ethics*, *filings*, *folk*, *glanders*, *goods* (poſſeſſions), good *graces* (favour), *grains*, *hyſterics*, *ides*, *lungs*, *mallows*, *manners* (behaviour), *mathematics*, *matins*, *meaſles*, *metaphyſics*, *news*, *nones*, *oats*, *odds*, *orgies*, *pains* (labour), *paraphernalia*, *poſteriors*, *quarters* (a ſoldier's lodging), *riches*, *ſciſſors*, *ſhambles*, *ſhears*, *ſnuffers*, *thanks*, *tidings*, *tongs*, *veſpers*, *victuals*, *vitals*, *wages*, a number ending with —*es* in rule 49, and perhaps a few beſides, which may be known by their ſimilarity to theſe.

EXAMPLES.

(616) *When Rhea heard theſe news, ſhe fled from her huſband to her brother Saturn.* Raleigh. (617) *Judging is balancing an account, and determining on which ſide the odds lie.* Locke. (618) *Quickſilver, lead, iron, and tin have opacity or blackneſs.* Peacham.

(619) *The bellows of his lungs begin to ſwell.* Dryden.

## Of the NOMINATIVE and POSSESSIVE CASES.

266. WHEN one perſon or thing is mentioned as belonging to another, that to which it belongs, if placed firſt, muſt be in the poſſeſſive Caſe; that is, it muſt be followed by an apoſtrophe and *s*, or

if plural and ending in *s* by an apoſtrophe only. The word itſelf, without this addition, is ſaid to be in the *nominative caſe*. If the *poſſeſſor*, or term expreſſing the perſon or thing to which another belongs, be placed after the thing, it is in the nominative and preceded by the prepoſition *of*. But when the thing poſſeſſed takes *a*, *an*, *this*, *theſe*, *that*, *thoſe*, *yonder*, or ſome other word of like kind before it, the poſſeſſor is placed the latter, and has both the 's and the prepoſition.

EXAMPLES.

(620) *A courtier's dependent is a beggar's dog.* Dodſley's Fables. (621) *A man's voluntary expence ſhould not exceed his income.* Johnſon. (622) *The end and deſign of God's directing theſe puniſhments was the peace, happineſs, ſecurity and well-being of ſociety.* Manning, Sermons, p. 21. (623) *The cauſes of Gainſborough's arriving to that high degree of excellence*——— Monthly Review. (624) *I naturally fell into the repetition of ſome lines out of a poem of Milton's, which he entitles Il Penſoroſo.* Spec. No. 425.

(625) *No prince, no peer, ſhall have juſt cauſe to ſay,*
*Heaven ſhorten Harry's happy life one day.* Shakſpere.

(626) *Weigh the men's wits againſt the ladies' hairs.* Pope.

(627) *By doctors' bills to play the doctor's part.* id.

(628) *The long hiſtorian of my country's woes.* id.

(629) *From thee is all that ſoothes the life of man,*
*His high endeavour, and his glad ſucceſs,*
*His ſtrength to ſuffer, and his will to ſtrve.* Cowper.

EXERCISES.

(630) Thomas Chadwick his book. (631) Elizabeth Mather her hand-writing. (632) What is every-bodies buſineſs is nobodies. (634) ——for mere opinion ſake. (635) That Calvin's opinion that you were ſpeaking of is very curious. (636)

2 Chronicles xvi, 14. (637) Eſther iii. 4. (638) 10. (639) Pſalm ciii. 5. (640) John xii. 15. (641) Coloſſians iii. 6.

(642) He's a ſucceſsful warrior,
And has the ſoldier's hearts.—
*Dryd. Span. Fri. An Edinb. Ed.*

(643) When proud Ceſar
Shew'd Rome her Catos figure drawn in ſtate,
As her dead fathers' reverend image paſt,
The pomp was darken'd and the day o'ercaſt.

(644) Though neighbours children they were born.

(645) Father's alone a fathers heart can know.

267. The poſſeſſive of proper names ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, is ſometimes marked by an apoſtrophe only. In verſe, this is allowable, though not neceſſary; in proſe it appears awkward.

EXAMPLES.

(646) *Theſe were the gloves he gave me at Patty Lucas's burial.* Mrs. Bennet, Agnes De Courcy.

(647) *For Orpheus' lute was ſtrung with poets' ſinews,*
*Whoſe golden touch could ſoften ſteel and ſtones.*
Shakſpere, Two Gentlemen of Verona, A. iii. v. 455.

(648) *A train of heroes follow'd through the field,*
*Who bore by turns great Ajax' ſevenfold ſhield.* Pope.

(649) *When Cortez' furious legions flew*
*O'er ravag'd fields of rich Peru,*
*Struck with his bleeding people's woes,*
*Old India's awful genius roſe:*
*He ſat on Andes' topmoſt ſtone,*
*And heard a thouſand nations groan.* Warton.

(650) *Juſt as he ſtoop'd Agaſtrophus's creſt*
*To ſeize, and drew the arrow from his breaſt,*
*The bowſtring twang'd.* Pope, Hom. Il. xi. 479.

EXERCISES.

(651) Wallis' derivations are often ſo made, that by the ſame licence any language may be derived from any other.

(652) If in Olympus top where thou
Sitt'ſt to behold thy ſacred ſhow,
If in Alpheus's ſilver flight,
If in my verſe thou take delight———

(653) As next of kin Achilles his arms I claim.

268. When the poſſeſſor is denoted by many terms, the *'s* muſt be joined to the laſt; but when one object is mentioned with ſeveral poſſeſſors, ſeparately named, each ſhould be in the poſſeſſive caſe. Whenever the uſe of the poſſeſſive would occaſion difficulties to the writer, or diſguſt to the reader, let the prepoſition be employed.

EXAMPLES.

(654) *We had a current report of the King of France's death.* Add. Spec. No. 403.

(655) *He ſaid: a leader's and a brother's fears*
*Poſſeſs his ſoul.* Pope, Hom. Il. iv. 220.

EXERCISES.

(656) He conſulted his wife and childrens good. (657) Frontinus gives us another example of Pyrrhus's Epirus's king's following this inſtruction of Homer.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(658) Boccace his Decameron was firſt publiſhed. *Dryden.* (659) This happened in the Auguſt following. (660) The lawfulneſs of the Hollanders their throwing off the monarchy of Spain. *Welwood.* (661) The forms of all the great bodys in the univerſe are nearly ſpherical. *Hutcheſon.* (662) Some have perplexed themſelves in vain to find out ſabbatical years to ſuit their hypotheſis's. *Prideaux.* (663) You know

Don Gomez his wife. *Dryden, Span. Fri.* (664) There are fiſhes' that have wing's. (665) My paper is the Ulyſſes his bow, in which every man of wit and learning may try his ſtrength. *Addiſon, Guardian*, No. 98. (666) If we look into the firſt of Socrates his rules of prayer, we find that form not only comprehended, but very much improved. *id. Spect.* No. 207. (667) Other creatures, as well as monkies, deſtroy their young-ones by ſenſeleſs fondneſs. (668) Poets, to give a looſe to a warm fancy, not only expatiate in their ſimilies, but introduce them too frequently. (669) Let the maſtiffs amuſe themſelves about a ſheep's ſkin. *Swift.* (670) The Muſſulmans faith is as great in degree as the Chriſtians, had they equal grounds for it: ſome Turkes are as well informed as ſome Engliſhmans. (671) Eſther viii. 10. (672) Pſalm cxxii. 8. (673) John xiii. 23. (674) Pſalm xcix. 1. (675) Acts xxv. 23. (676) Joſhua i. 1. (677) Acts xxiv. 27. (678) Matthew xiv. 3.

(679) Who lives to age
Fit to be made Methuſalem his page? *Donne.*

(680) By young Telemachus his blooming years. *Pope.*

(681) On cherubs and on cherubims
Full royally he rode. *Sternold, Pſ.* 18.

(682) Behold our weeping matrons tears,
Behold our tender virgins fears. *Dryden.*

(683) There ſtands a ſtructure on a riſing hill,
Where tyros take their freedom out to kill. *Garth.*

(684) And all the tribes reſound the Goddeſs' praiſe. *Pope.*

---

(685) Let us ſuppoſe for illuſtration' ſake*. (686) His fureſt courſe was to get poſſeſſion of the young lady's fortune and perſon in the firſt place, and to ſolicit the father and mother's conſent afterwards.

(687) We life enjoy, from ſins are freed
For his own mercies ſake.

---

* Where I have borrowed any piece of incorrect Engliſh from a living writer, I have ſuppreſſed his name. I hope the noting of theſe inconſiderable faults will not give offence, when its utility is conſidered, and each obſerves the good company in which I have placed him.

(688) The Chiſſel's powers, in high relievo, trace
Each worthies' form and ſoul-illumin'd face.

(689) ——And round the mimic patriots brows divine,
With pearly hands the verdant chaplets twine.

### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES
#### ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

(690) The greateſt pleaſure he took in reading Virgil was in examining Aeneas his voyage by the map. *Add. Spec.* No. 409. (691) Which, for diſtinction ſake, I have called the ſecondary pleaſures of the imagination. *ibid.* No. 416. (692) Take heed of a fanciful temper of mind, and an humorous conduct. *Watts.* (693) Valerio had an univerſal character. *Spec.* No. 408. (694) the King of aſſyria found Conſpiracy In hoſhea; for He had Sent Meſſengers to ſo king Of EgyPT. (695) Upon the Sundaies, and feſtivals, and their eves as alſo Wedneſdaies and Fridaies. *Fell.* (696) In the great variety of human genii, there are ſome which, though they ſee their object clearly and diſtinctly in general, yet, when they come to unfold its partes by diſcourſe or writing, loſe that luminous conception which they had before attained. (697) Myne own good doughter, our lorde be thanked I am in good helthe of bodye, and in good quiet of minde: and of worldly thynges I no more deſyer then I have. *Sir Thomas More.*

(698) nobles and heralds, By your leave!
Here Lie the Bones of matthew prior;
a Son Of adam and of eve:
let bourbon Or Naſſau Go higher.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of PRONOUNS.

269. THE Pronoun which ſtands inſtead of the name of the ſpeaker is ſaid to be of the *firſt perſon*, as *I*; that which ſtands for the name of one ſpoken

to is of the *ſecond* perſon, as *thou*; the *third* perſon is neither ſpeaking nor addreſſed, but merely ſpoken of, as *he*, *ſhe*, *it*. Each of theſe perſons has likewiſe a *plural number*; as firſt perſon *we*, ſecond *you*, or in the ſolemn ſtyle *ye*, third *they*. There are three diſtinct pronouns of the third perſon ſingular, to denote the *three genders*. Whatever is of the male ſex is of the *maſculine* gender, and denoted by *he*, as *man*, *boy*, *bull*: what is of the female ſex, is of the *feminine* gender, denoted by *ſhe*, as *woman*, *girl*, *cow*: what is of neither ſex, or hath its ſex unknown, is of the *neuter* gender, denoted by *it*, as *ſtone*, *ſparrow*, *virtue*.

EXAMPLES.

(699) *If we conſider the character of Cato without prejudice, he was certainly a great and worthy man.* Middleton. (700) *If kind affection be amiable in brutes, it is not leſs ſo in our own ſpecies.* Reid. (701) *He had a favorite ſparrow ſo tame that it picked crumbs from his hand.* Dr. Moore, Zeluco.

(702) *There ſwims no gooſe ſo gray, but, ſoon or late,*
*She finds ſome honeſt gander for her mate.* Pope.

(703) *The Spaniard*
*Muſt now confeſs, if he have any goodneſs,*
*The trial juſt and noble.* Shakſpere.

(704) *Art thou not, fatal viſion, ſenſible*
*To feeling as to ſight?* id. Macbeth.

(705) *The flowers ſhe wore along the day;*
*And every nymph and ſhepherd ſaid,*
*That in her hair they look'd more gay,*
*Than growing in their native bed.* Prior.

(706) *Where ſhall I find him? angels! tell me where:*
*You know him; he is near you: point him out.*
*Shall I ſee glories beaming from his brow?*
*Or trace his footſteps by the riſing flowers?* Young.

EXERCISES.

(707) Virgil is called the prince of Latin poets: It was born at Mantua. (708) A dogmatical ſpirit has many inconveniencies: He ſtops the ear againſt all farther reaſoning; ſhe ſhuts the mind againſt all farther improvement (709) Wiſe men are afraid of trifling: you think time his greateſt treaſure. (710) The ſpring is pleaſant: we is the moſt agreeable ſeaſon of the year. (711) Job xxxvii. 1. (712) John xv. 19.

## Of FIGURATIVE GENDERS.

270. THE following things are often conſidered as perſons and of ſome ſex, though in fact and in plain language they are neuter.

*The ſun, a ſtar, a month except May, any of the ſeaſons except ſpring, time, age, death, ſleep, love, the planets Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, and Saturn, chaos, famine, thunder, a wind, heaven, a mountain or hill, a river, with ſome others are maſculine.*

*The world, the earth, the moon, the planet Venus, May, ſpring, paradiſe, hell, darkneſs, a lake, a valley, harmony, the ſoul, a church, religion, nature, fortune, a building, a ſhip, a gun, a country, a city, a town, a deep, a ſoil, a vine, the calm air, morning, evening, grace, virtue, with the particular kinds of it, as charity, juſtice, vice with its particular kinds, as malice, intemperance, powers or properties of the mind, as fancy, wiſdom, and a few beſides are feminine.*

EXAMPLES.

(713) *It is the buſineſs of moraliſts to detect the frauds of fortune, and to ſhow that ſhe impoſes upon the careleſs eye, by a quick ſucceſſion of ſhadows.* Johnſon, Rambler, No. 58. (714) —*As if ſuſpicion herſelf had dictated the plan.* id. Prince of Abyſſinia.

(715) *The dog-ſtar levelled his rays full at his head.* Spec. No. 425. (716) *England by means of her naval force was perfectly ſecure.* Hume, Hiſt. of Eng. c. 45. (717) *Many holy men, he ſaid, and our anceſtors among the reſt, had been ſeduced to concur with that church in her ſcholaſtic doctrines, who yet had never admitted her ſeditious principles.* id. c. 46. (718) Job v. 16. (719) Pſalm lxxxvii. 5. (720) Proverbs ix. 1. 2.

(721) *All crimes ſhall ceaſe, and ancient fraud ſhall fail,*
*Returning Juſtice lift aloft her ſcale;*
*Peace o'er the world her olive wand extend;*
*And white-rob'd Innocence from heaven deſcend.* Pope.

(722) *See Nature haſtes her earlieſt wreaths to bring,*
*With all the incenſe of the breathing ſpring:*
*See lofty Lebanon his head advance;*
*See nodding foreſts on the mountains dance.* id.

(723) *Months that are gone*
*Are gone for ever, and have borne away*
*Each his own load.* Watts, Horae Lyricae.

(724) *He calls for Famine, and the meagre fiend*
*Blows mildew from between his blaſting lips,*
*And taints the golden ear.* Cowper.

(725) *The thunder,*
*Wing'd with red lightning and impetuous rage,*
*Perhaps hath ſpent his ſhafts, and ceaſes now*
*To bellow through the vaſt and boundleſs deep.*
Milton, P. L. i. 174.

(726) *While ſmooth Adonis from his native rock*
*Ran purple to the ſea.* id. ibid. 450.

(727) *This deſert ſoil*
*Wants not her hidden luſtre, gems and gold.* id. ibid. 270.

(728) *Here Love his golden ſhafts employs, here lights*
*His conſtant lamp, and waves his purple wings.* ib. 762.

(729) *Dark ſets their ſun depriv'd of all his light.*
Verſes on Mr. Weſley.

## EXERCISES.

(730) Wine throws a man out of himſelf, and infuſes qualities into the mind which it is a ſtranger to in its ſober moments. (731) Malevolence beheld me and ſighed: his root, it cried, is fixed in the depths. (732) When I think of theſe things, Death becomes the meſſenger of very glad tidings:—— its ſharpeſt arrow becomes the ſtaff of my ſupport. (733) Great Britain boaſts, and he may well boaſt of the improvement ſhe has made in politics by the ſyſtem of repreſentation.

(734) Thames heard the numbers as ſhe flow'd along,
And bade its willows learn the moving ſong.

(735) Time in advance behind her hides her wings.

(736) The Sun
(As if the Sun could envy) check'd its beams.

(737) The flowery lap
Of ſome irriguous valley ſpread its ſtore;
Flowers of all hue, and without thorn the roſe.

(738) And in their motions harmony divine
So ſmooths its charming tones, that God's own ear
Liſtens delighted.

(739) When old age has on your temples ſhed
Her ſilver froſt, there's no returning ſun. *Watts.*

(740) Grief is proud and makes his owner ſtout. *Shakſpere.*

271. The neuter pronoun, beſide its primary ſenſe, may expreſs, 1. The ſtate of any thing or perſon: 2. Any cauſe whatever, or perſon or perſons conſidered as a cauſe: 3. A perſon familiarly, ludicrouſly, or rudely: 4. A mere emphaſis ludicrouſly uſed like an object after neuter verbs: 5. A ſubſtantive, not expreſſed on account of the clearneſs with which the reſt of the phraſe points it out: 6. Sometimes when what is expreſſed by a ſentence or clauſe is ſaid to do or to be ſomething, this pronoun is uſed to refer to the clauſe, which in that caſe is placed after the aſſertion.

EXAMPLES.

1ſt.

(741) *How is it with our general?* Shakſpere.

2nd.

(742) *'Tis theſe that early taint the female ſoul.* Pope.

3rd.

(743) *Let us after him*
*Whoſe care is gone before to bid us welcome:*
*It is a peerleſs kinſman.* Shakſpere.

4th.

(744) *Whether the charmer ſinner it or ſaint it*——Pope.

5th.

(745) *It rains; it is very cold; it is bad traveling; but it is only twenty miles to London.*

6th.

(746) *It happen'd on a ſummer's holiday*
*That to the greenwood ſhade he took his way.* Dryden.

*

(747) *I have often ſeen people laviſh it profuſely in tricking up their children, and yet ſtarve their minds.* Locke. (748) *The hills being high about them, it ſnows at the tops of them oftener than it rains.* Bacon. (749) *He meant to walk it back again for his pleaſure.* Raleigh. (750) *Hebrews* xiii. 9. (751) *Iſaiah* iii. 11. (752) *Proverbs* xviii. 5.

(753) *'Tis come to paſs*
*That tractable obedience is a ſlave.* Shakſpere.

## CASES.

272. PRONOUNS have three caſes: 1. The *nominative* which ſtands for the *ſubject* of the verb, or that of which ſomething is affirmed, as

*I* love: it is uſed likewiſe in addreſſing a perſon, as, *O thou*, attend: 2. The *poſſeſſive*, which is both *relative*, coming immediately before the thing poſſeſſed, or its adjective, as *My* good boy; and *abſolute*, coming after the thing poſſeſſed, or very diſtant from it, as, The good boy, whom you ſaw yeſterday, is *mine*: 3. The *objective*, ſtanding for the *object* of the verb, or that to which any thing is done, as, John ſtrikes *me*. *Am* or any word of the ſame ſenſe will have two nominatives, as, *Thou* art *he*; but *to be* and *to have been* have an objective. Prepoſitions alſo have an objective after them.

NOMINATIVE CASES—*I, thou, he, ſhe, it, we, ye* or *you, they, who.*

POSSESSIVE CASES RELATIVE—*my, thy, his, her, its* (which hath no abſolute form or uſe) *our, your, their, whoſe.*

POSSESSIVE CASES ABSOLUTE—*mine, thine, his* (ſtrongly emphatical) *hers, ours, yours, theirs, whoſe.*

OBJECTIVE CASES—*me, thee, him, her, it, us, you, them, whom.*

EXAMPLES.

(754) *A man can never be obliged to ſubmit to any power, unleſs he can be ſatisfied, who is the perſon who has a right to exerciſe it.* Locke. (755) *On whom does time hang ſo heavy, as on the ſlothful?* Blair, Sermons. (756) *To him that lives well, every form of life is good.* Johnſon, Raſſelas. (757) *They ſupply our markets by copious exportations of the cottons that were loaded here at the ſame time with ours, two or three months before our veſſels can reach England.* Howard on the Lazarettoes. (758) *After an affected conſultation on his own health, he turned the converſation on hers.*

Dr. Moore, Zeluco. (759) *Pſalm* lxxiii. 25. (760) lxxxix. 11. (761) 26. (762) *Matthew* xiv. 27. (763) 1 *John* v. 6. (764) *Revelations* vii. 14.

(765) *Save me from the gaiety of thoſe*
*Whoſe head-aches nail them to a noonday bed;*
*And ſave me too from theirs whoſe haggard eyes*
*Flaſh deſperation, and betray their pangs,*
*For property ſtript off by cruel chance.* Cowper.

(766) *Of night impatient we demand the day,*
*The day arrives, and for the night we pray.* Blackmore.

(767) *Ye learned heads, whom ivy garlands grace*—— Cowley.

## EXERCISES.

(768) Me hate a liar: him is not to be truſted: us are never ſure when him ſpeaks the truth. (769) I will remember ſhe. Who will you remember? Me do not underſtand he. (770) I underſtand it to be thou. (771) It is not me you are in love with. *Addiſon.* (772) Theſe reaſons, which ſecure they from ours authority, make they obnoxious to your. (773) When a wiſe man gives thou better counſel, give I back my.

(774) O thee! that with ſurpaſſing glory crown'd,
Look'ſt from thine ſole dominion like the God
Of this new world; at whom ſight all the ſtars
Hide theirs diminiſh'd heads; to thou me call——

(775) Aſk of he,
Or aſk of whoſoever him has taught,
And learn though late the general cauſe of all.

273. *Who*, *which*, and *that* are called *relatives*, when they refer to another word, generally before them, which word is called an *antecedent*: the two firſt are interrogatives when they form part of a queſtion, which is determined by the interrogation-mark: *who* is maſculine or feminine but in ſuch a ſenſe as to be applied only to rational beings: *which* is neuter, and applied to brutes even when their ſex is known: *that* is common to

the three genders, but is beſt adapted to the familiar ſtyle. Immediately after *the ſame*, *that* is the proper relative. It is ungraceful to change the relative, as, He *whom* you know, and *that* you ſhould reverence.——After *ſuch* we muſt not uſe the relative but the conjunction *as*. *What* includes both the relative and the antecedent, and ſometimes is an interrogative.

EXAMPLES.

(776) *Plutarch tells us of a heathen who was ſinging a hymn to Diana, in which he celebrated her for her delight in human ſacrifices.* Spectator.

(777) *Saints that taught and led the way to heaven.* Tickell.

(778) *Who built yon alms-houſe neat and void of ſtate,*
*Where age and want ſit ſmiling at the gate?* Pope.

(779) *Vouchſafe——*
*To reſt; and what the garden choiceſt bears*
*To ſit and taſte.* Milton, P. L. v. 368.

(780) 1 *Tim.* vi. 13.

EXERCISES.

(781) You are the perſon which I wanted to ſee. (782) The town whoſe inhabitants were all deſtroyed. (783) Great care is taken to avoid all ſuch words, in every part of this book, which might excite looſe and diſorderly thoughts. *Dilworth.* (784) He is the ſame man whom you ſaw before. (785) This is the hen whom I loſt a while ago. (786) The man who is frugal, and that minds his buſineſs, will have a great degree of ſatisfaction. (787) Luke xvi. 15. (788) Pſalm civ. 28. (789) 2 Cor. viii. 12.

(790) Thoſe darts whoſe points make gods adore. *Prior.*

274. A relative frequently refers to a perſonal pronoun, when the latter has no expreſſed ſub-

ſtantive, but ſtands for the perſon or thing deſcribed by what is connected with the relative.

EXAMPLES.

(791) *He keeps his road well enough who gets rid of bad company.* Italian Proverb. (792) *That is beſt which is moſt ſeaſonable.* id. (793) *Prov.* xv. 32. (794) xxiii. 30. (795) 1 *Tim.* vi. 15, 16.

275. When a queſtion is aſked by the interrogative *who*, and the anſwer given by a pronoun, they muſt both be put in the ſame caſe: If the anſwer be given by a ſubſtantive, it muſt be poſſeſſive if the interrogative be, otherwiſe nominative. In pronouns the abſolute poſſeſſive is uſed.

EXAMPLES.

(796) *Whoſe are theſe books? George's and mine.* (797) *Whom do you call? Him.* (798) 1 *Kings* xx. 14. (799) *Iſaiah* lxiii. 1.

EXERCISES.

(800) Who will ride? Me. (801) Whom do you ſerve? She whom we met juſt now. Whoſe is that elegant houſe that I paſſed about a mile off? She. (802) Whoſe is that ſtrong building called the jail? The county and your.

276. The poſſeſſive caſe of pronouns is uſed to denote property and never the objective with *of*, except for convenience of referring, which is often done to the poſſeſſive itſelf.

EXAMPLES.

(803) *There is ſeldom any other clue to the motives of particular actions, than the general tenor of his life by whom they are performed.* Adventurer, No. 46. (804) *Pſalm* cv. 3. (805) *John* vii. 18.

(806) *This obſcure and periſhable marble*
*The humble monument, not of his praiſe,*

*But of their eſteem, affection, and regret,*
*Who knew him, lov'd him, and lament him.*
Weſt, Epitaph on Dr. Doddridge.

EXERCISES.

(807) The works of God and the word of him both declare the perfections of him.

(808) As being the contrary to the high will of him
Whom we reſiſt. If then his providence
Out of the evil of us ſeek to bring forth good——

(809) Given him by this great conference to know
Of things above this world, and of the Being of them
Who dwell in heaven; whoſe excellence he ſaw
Tranſcend his own ſo far——

277. After the poſſeſſive caſe plural a ſingular ſubſtantive is frequently inſerted, not only where the thing poſſeſſed is one, for then it is ſo of neceſſity, but where each poſſeſſor individually has one thing of the kind; where it is rather a poetical elegance than ſtrictly grammatical.

EXAMPLES.

(810) *Their bliſs within their boſom ſprings.* Watts.

(811) *Our wit is given Almighty God to know,*
*Our will is given to love him being known.* Sir J. Davies.

(812) *I ſee th' Eternal all his fury ſhed,*
*And ſhake his Aegis o'er their guilty head.* Pope.

(813) *On the green turf, their moſſy neſt,*
*The evening anthem ſwells their breaſt.* S. Weſley, Sen.

(814) *Job* xxix. 10.

278. It is neceſſary to be very particular in marking the connection between the pronoun and its ſubſtantive, and between the antecedent and

its relative. Sometimes this is done by inſerting the former in a parentheſis near the latter, which though not very elegant, is preferable to obſcurity in the ſenſe. As to the circumlocution, *He, ſhe, or they*, it is only uſed in law and burleſque; *whoever* anſwering the ſame end.

EXAMPLES.

(815) *Ceſar was the rival and enemy, and Cicero the friend of Pompey: yet he (Cicero) ſcrupled not to ſpeak in his (Pompey's) praiſe, before him (Ceſar), even when he (Pompey) was dead.* (816) *Whoever will apply at my houſe may receive full ſatisfaction in this affair.*

EXERCISES.

(817) He ſhe or they who behave well will be eſteemed. (818) Virtue and vice make the principal difference among men; far greater than that of poverty and riches: for they determine whether they are to be happy or miſerable when they are diſtinguiſhed by them no more.

279. The compound pronoun with *ſelf* is added to the perſonal and to ſubſtantives to denote emphaſis. The adjective *own* is added to poſſeſſives for the ſame purpoſe. The compound is likewiſe uſed alone. Its moſt general employment is to ſtand inſtead of the objective caſe when the ſubject of a verb is likewiſe its object or connected by a prepoſition. *Ourſelf* is uſed in the regal ſtile, and *yourſelf* when the plural is put for the ſingular.

EXAMPLES.

(819) *We ourſelves might diſtinctly number in words a great deal farther than we uſually do.* Locke. (820) *There is nothing ſillier than a crafty knave outwitted and beaten at his own play.* L'Eſtrange. (821) 2 *Sam.* xix. 2. (822) xx. 24.

(823) *To make ſociety*
*The ſweeter welcome, we will keep ourſelf*
*Till ſupper-time alone.* Shakſpere, Macbeth.

(824) *If it ſtand as you yourſelf ſtill do,*
*Within the eye of honour———* id.

(825) *Myſelf ſhall mount the roſtrum in his favour,*
*And try to gain his pardon.* Addiſon.

EXERCISES.

(826) I will waſh me all over. (827) My friend, take care of yourſelves. (828) A good man will not think always upon the intereſt of himſelf.

280. *Your* is ſometimes uſed with a ludicrous redundancy.

EXAMPLE.

(829) *Rich honeſty dwells like your miſer, Sir, in a poor houſe; as your pearl in your foul oyſter.* Shakſpere.

281. The adverbs *hereof, hereunto,* &c. ſignify *of this, of theſe,* or *of it, unto this,* &c.—*thereof,* &c. *of that, of thoſe,* or *of it,* &c.—*whereof, of which,* or *of what,* &c. and are now rendered by the pronouns or adjectives, except in law and writings of that kind.

EXERCISES.

(830) The acquiſition of truth is of infinite concernment: hereby we become acquainted with the nature of things. *Watts.*

(831) Dare to be true: nothing can need a lie:
A fault that needs it moſt grows two thereby.
*Herbert.*

(832) Where's the palace whereinto foul things
Sometimes intrude not. *Shakſpere, Othello.*

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(833) Who ſhould I ſee in the lid of it but the Doctor. *Addiſon.* (834) When Squire Broadfield and me arrived in company to ſee the ſport. *Macgowan.* (835) Is there any other doctrine whoſe followers are puniſhed? *Addiſon.* (836) It is in the power of the imagination when it is once ſtocked with particular ideas to enlarge, compound, and vary them at her own pleaſure. *id. Spec. No.* 416. (837) The Almighty, which giveth wiſdom to whomſoever it pleaſeth him, did, for the good of his church, ſtay thoſe eager affections. *Hooker.* (838) Perhaps the court of Vienna conſidered the ceſſion of Sileſia as a circumſtance altogether compulſive——She did not at all doubt that the King of Pruſſia would be tempted to take ſome ſtep, which might be juſtly interpreted into an infraction of the treaty of Dreſden. *Smollet, Hiſt. of Eng.* (839) My conductor anſwered that it was him. *Goldſmith.* (840) To conſider adviſedly of that is moved. *Bacon.* (841) Men look with an evil eye upon the good that is in others; and think that their reputation obſcures them; and that their commendable qualities ſtand in their light; and therefore they do what they can to caſt a cloud over them, that the bright ſhining of their virtues may not obſcure them. *Tillotſon, Serm.* i. 42. (842) The Earl of Falmouth and Mr. Coventry were rivals who ſhould have moſt influence with the Duke, who loved the Earl beſt, but thought the other the wiſer man, who ſupported Pen, who diſobliged all the courtiers, even againſt the Earl, who contemned Pen as a fellow of no ſenſe. *Clarendon.* (843) Pſalm i. 3. (844) Num. xx. 8. (845) Matt. xxi. 17. (846) Mark v. 19. (847) Acts xviii. 26. (848) Col. i. 12. (849) Acts xiii. 25. (850) Matt. vi. 9. (851) xvi. 13.

(852) Which of ye will be mortal to redeem
Man's mortal crime? *Milton, P. L.* iii. 214.

(853) Heaven caſts thee out
From all her confines. *id. ibid.* vi. 272.

(854) ——Had you laid this brittle ware
On Dun, the old ſurefooted mare,
Though all the ravens of the hundred
With croaking had your tongue out-thunder'd,
Surefooted Dun had kept his legs,
And you, good woman, ſav'd your eggs. *Gay.*

(855) Liberality of ſentiment has made that progreſs, of late years, as to render it probable that the eighteenth century may end glorioufly. (856) It was him who made theſe arts known in Ruſſia. (857) He was to be careful who he admitted into that office. (858) Of Dr. Katterfelto may be had, in quantities, ſolid, liquid, and powder phoſphorus, and ſuch that fires tin.

### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

(859) A noun ſubſtantive is that ſtandeth by himſelf, and requireth not another word to be joined with him to ſhew his ſignification. *Latin Accidence.* (860) Such thynges as I ſomewhat longed to talke with you all, concerning the worlde to come, our Lorde put theim into your myndes, as I truſte he dothe and better to by hys holy ſpirite : who bleſſe you and preſerve you all. *Sir T. More.* (861) Apprehending the goſpel of Chriſt we yield thereunto our unfeigned aſſent. *Hooker.* (862) 2 Chron. xxiv. 13. (863) John vi. 9. (864) Rom. xii. 20. (865) 1 Cor. xiii. 4, 5. (866) Acts xxii. 4. (867) 2 Cor. x. 11.

(868) You, fair Sir, be not herewith diſmaid,
But conſtant keep the way in which ye ſtand. *Spenſer.*
(869) He rallied and again fell to't;
For, catching foe by nearer foot,
He lifted with ſuch might and ſtrength,
As would have hurl'd him thrice his length. *Butler.*
(870) Now Margaret's curſe is fallen on our heads
When ſhe exclaim'd on Haſtings, you, and I. *Shakſ.*
(871) The river of bliſs through midſt of heaven
Rolls o'er Elyſian flowers her amber ſtream. *Milton.*

## CHAP. XII.

## Of ADJECTIVES.

282. ADJECTIVES have three *degrees of compariſon;* the *poſitive* or word uncompared, the *comparative* compared with particulars of its kind,

and the *ſuperlative* compared with all of its kind, or all in a certain place or connection. Words of one ſyllable are made comparative by putting *---er* to the end of them, or *more* before them; and ſuperlative by putting *---eſt* to the end of them, or *moſt* before them. The ſame may be obſerved of diſſyllables in *---y*, as *happy*; or in *---le* after a mute, as *ample*; or that have the laſt ſyllable accented, as *polite*. Other words in general are compared by prefixing the adverb, not by adding the termination. The comparative has *than* before the thing with which it is compared, and the ſuperlative *of*. The relative after the ſuperlative muſt be *that*, not *who* or *which*.

## EXAMPLES.

(872) *Your mind will aſſume a graver and more penſive caſt.* Blair, Serm. vol. iii. p. 123. (873) *Miracles prove the exiſtence of a God in a ſhorter and more ſatisfactory manner than the obſervation of the uninterrupted courſe of nature.* Prieſtley, Sermons on the Reſur. (874) *It is one of the calmeſt and moſt moderate of all diſcourſes.* id. Appeal on the Riots. (875) *Life has been compared to a race; but the alluſion ſtill improves, by obſerving, that the moſt ſwift are ever the moſt apt to ſtray from the courſe.* Goldſmith, Eſſay iii. (876) *Fortune wore her angrieſt look.* id. ibid xii. (877) *Were our ſenſes altered, and made much quicker and acuter, the appearance and outward ſcheme of things would have quite another face to us.* Locke. (878) *Pſalm* lv. 21.

(879) *Statues, with ivy crown'd belong*
*To nobler poets, for a nobler ſong.* Dryden.

(880) *With lovelier luſtre wakes the huntreſs queen*
*To ſhower her ſhafts of ſilver o'er the ſcene.*
Merry, Laurel of Liberty.

(881) *Would we attain the happieſt ſtate*
*That is deſign'd us here;*
*No joy a rapture muſt create,*
*No grief beget deſpair.* Counteſs of Winchelſea.

EXERCISES.

(882) Nothing is dangerouſer as too much confidence. (883) The virtuouſeſt female is the lovelieſt. (884) The Dominicans were the more learned: they were the eminenteſt preachers of the times. *Burnet, Travels.* (885) His queſtion would be properer, what kind of beauty was the chief in poetry. *Fielding, Joſeph Andrews.* (886) The ſweeteſt moments which paſs are thoſe which are ſpent in devout or virtuous employments.

283. The following are compared in an irregular manner, thus, *good, better, beſt*; *bad, evil,* or *ill, worſe, worſt*; *much* or *many, more, moſt*; *little, leſs, leaſt*; *near, nearer, neareſt* or *next*; *far* (now obſolete as an adjective), *farther* or *further, fartheſt* or *furtheſt*; *late,* regular with regard to time, with regard to other things, *latter, laſt*; *old, elder, eldeſt,* more frequently regular; *fore, former, foremoſt*; *hind, hinder, hindermoſt* or *hindmoſt.*

EXAMPLES.

(887) *We are compelled by a greater difficulty to admit a leſs.* Dr. Prieſtley, Sermon on the Reſur. (888) *Let me add a farther truth, that without ties of gratitude, I have a particular inclination to honour you.* Dryden. (889) *Eldeſt parents ſignifies either the oldeſt men and women that have children, or thoſe who have longeſt had iſſue.* Locke. (890) *Gen.* xxxii. 10. (891) xxxiii. 2. (892) *Deuteronomy* xxv. 18. (893) *Eccles.* ix. 18. (894) 1 *Tim.* v. 8.

(895) *The beſt, the deareſt fav'rite of the ſky*
*Muſt taſte that cup; for man was born to die.*
Pope, Homer's Odyſſey.

(896) *Crown my joys, or cure my pain;*
*Give me more love, or more diſdain:* Carew.

(897) *He had ſo many languages in ſtore,*
*That only fame ſhall ſpeak of him in more.* Cowley.

(898) *The good man warn'd us from his text*
*That none could tell whoſe turn ſhould be the next.* Gay.

(899) *The preſent point of time is all thou haſt,*
*The future doubtful, and the former paſt.* Harte.

EXERCISES.

(900) The pain that any one actually feels is ſtill of all others the baddeſt. (901) The queſtion ſtill remains how men come often to prefer the worſer to the gooder. (902) Garden fruits which have any acrimony in them, and manieſt ſorts of berries, will produce diarrhœas.

(903) It is the leſſer blot, modeſty finds,
Women to change their ſhapes, than men their minds.
*Shakſpere.*

284. It is a moſt diſguſting fault to have two ſigns of the ſame degree; as ſome ſay *more wiſer* inſtead of *wiſer*, *moſt agreeableſt* inſtead of *moſt agreeable*, and *leſſer* for *leſs*.

EXERCISES.

(904) Grammar is one of the moſt eaſieſt, and moſt pleaſanteſt, as well as moſt uſefulleſt ſtudies. (905) We have not had a more finer day this ſeaſon. (906) Bigoted zeal is the moſt abſurdeſt of prejudices maſqued with reaſon, the moſt criminaleſt of paſſions covered with the appearance of duty.

(907) Let not my worſer ſpirit tempt me again
To die before your time. *Shakſpere.*

(908) It hath been the longeſt night
That e'er I watch'd and the moſt heavieſt.
*id. Two Gent. of Verona.*

285: Some adjectives cannot be compared, the thing ſignified by them admitting of no degrees, as *two*, *this*, *which*, &c. Others have only the comparative degree, as *preferable*, *ſuperior*, *inferior*, *prior*, *poſterior*, &c. theſe have *to* before the thing with which they are compared. Others have only the ſuperlative degree, as *chief*, *extreme*, *ſupreme*, *ſuperlative*, and many words ending in *moſt* as *topmoſt*. Others have the two latter degrees but want the poſitive, as, *nether*, *nethermoſt*; *outer*, *outermoſt*; *under*, *undermoſt*; *upper*, *uppermoſt*. Care muſt be taken not to prefix the adverbial ſigns or annex the terminations to any of theſe.

EXAMPLES.

(909) *He laughs at men of far ſuperior underſtandings to his, for not being as well-dreſſed as himſelf.* Swift. (910) *Almoſt every man in our nation is a politician, and hath a ſcheme of his own, which he thinks preferable to that of any other.* Addiſon.

(911) *His own love bequeath'd ſupreme command.* Dryden.

(912) *Your country, chief in arms, abroad defend;*
*At home with morals, arts, and laws amend.* Pope.

EXERCISES.

(913) With moſt men advancing in life, more inferior ſtudies muſt give way to more ſuperior ones. (914) Heſiod was more poſterior than Homer. (915) The extremeſt parts of Siberia are very cold. (916) 1 Sam. xxi. 7.

286. Adjectives may be divided into *five claſſes* with reſpect to *number*. 1. *Singular*, as *one*, *every*, *each*: the two latter refer to many things but take them ſingularly. 2. *Dual*, or ſuch as relate to two; as *two*, *both*, real duals; *either*, *whether*, *neither*, dual ſingulars, relating to one of two,

thus, *either*, *any of two*; *whether*, *which of two*; *neither*, *none of two*. 3. *Plural*, as *few*, *ſeveral* meaning *many*, *numberleſs*, *numerous*, the old words *ſundry* and *divers*, &c. *three*, *four*, and all larger numerals. 4. *Variable*, or having both a ſingular and plural of the ſame ſenſe, as *this*, *theſe*; *that*, *thoſe*; *enough*, *enow*; *another*, *others*; *much*, *many*. 5. *Common*, or ſuch as may be joined indifferently with any number; ſuch are moſt adjectives not ſpecified above. *Whole* with ſingulars is ſynonymous with *all*, in plurals not, being oppoſed to parts of ſingle things, not to the part of a number.

EXAMPLES.

(917) *The balance by a propenſity to either ſide inclined to neither.* Fell. (918) *The ſoul converſes with numberleſs beings of her own creation.* Addiſon. (919) *Dan.* xi. 27.

(920) *From pole to pole the thunder roars aloud,*
*And broken lightenings flaſh from every cloud.* Pope.

(921) *On winter ſeas we fewer ſtorms behold,*
*Than foul diſeaſes that infect the fold.* Dryden.

(922) *That ſpot to which I point is paradiſe,*
*Adam's abode, thoſe lofty ſhades his bower.* Milton.

EXERCISES.

(923) There are many members yet each in their ſeveral functions, &c. *Sterne.* (924) Which is more beneficial, that we ſhould have the ſame yearly quantity of heat diſtributed equally, or a greater ſhare in ſummer, and in winter a leſs? (925) The ſeveral places of rendezvous were concerted, and the whole operations fixed.

(926) My conquering brother will have ſlaves enough
To pay his cruel vows for victory.

287. A few adjectives have both a relative and an abſolute ſtate, like the poſſeſſive caſes of pro-

nouns; as *no*, *none*; *every*, *each* which in verſe is uſed relatively; *other*, ſingular *another*, plural *others*, and *another* is ſometimes relative for *an other*; *any* often uſed abſolutely, *ought* or *aught*. Adjectives in general are made abſolute at pleaſure by prefixing the definite article. But *this*, *that*, *ſome*, *any*, *which*, *either*, *ſuch*, *many*, *few*, *all*, *both*, and numerals *one*, *two*, &c. are ſeldom connected with articles, and are uſed abſolutely without any variation or addition. Alſo when *thing* or *things* is underſtood, and generally when the ſubſtantive belonging to it is near, the article may be omitted. The adjectives called *common* in the laſt rule may be of either number, when abſolute, according to their connection. Numerals, *another* and *others* have a poſſeſſive caſe.—Note, Having mentioned the adjectives which make articles unneceſſary, it may be proper to add, that poſſeſſives do the ſame; thus, for *The* grace of God, we ſay, God's grace, not, *The* God's grace; and, My book, not, *The* my book. See rules 257, 266.

EXAMPLES.

(927) *Nothing is more unpleaſing than to find that offence has been given where none was intended.* Johnſon, Rambler, No. 56. (928) *He that will not lay a foundation for perpetual diſorder, muſt of neceſſity find another riſe of government.* Locke. (929) *In the caſe of Sodom, God ſaid he would not deſtroy it for ten's ſake.* (930) *Deut.* xxii. 39. (931) *Pſalm* xx. 7. (932) xxxvii. 12, 13, 14, (933) lxxxi. 11. (934) *Rom.* xiv. 5.

(935) *Her maids around her mov'd, a duteous band!*
*Each bore a crook all rural in her hand.* Collins.

(936) *Theſe all in ſweet confuſion ſought the ſhade,*
*And fill'd each pauſe the nightingale had made.* Goldſmith.

(937) *Reſt or intermiſſion none I find.* Milton, P. L. ii. 802.

(938) *Other creature here,*
*Beaſt, bird, inſect, or worm durſt enter none.* id. ib. iv. 704.

(939) *Hail Univerſal Lord! be bounteous ſtill*
*To give us only good: and if the night*
*Have gather'd ought of evil, or conceal'd*
*Diſpel it, as now light diſpels the dark.* id. ib. v. 205.

(940) *All ſat mute,*
*Pondering the danger with deep thoughts; and each*
*In others' countenance read his own diſmay.* id. ib. ii. 420.

EXERCISES.

(941) What uſe Homer every where makes of each little accident. *Eſſay in Pope's Homer.* (942) This picture of Judah's deſolation might be ſome reſemblance of what every of Aſa's ſubjects would probably form to himſelf. *Sterne, Sermons.* (943) Of good actions ſome are better than other ſome. *Hooker.* (944) The buſineſs of rich is to promote the happineſs of ſociety, as that of poor is to produce its neceſſaries. (945) Goring made a faſt friendſhip, the either of them believing he could deceive the other. (946) John xix. 18. (947) 1 Cor. xi. 21.

288. *One* has frequently the appearance of a ſubſtantive, as, *a rich one, upright ones.* In this form it is uſed for *ſome* or *any perſon*; or for *I, we* or *all perſons*. *A man* or *men* in this ſenſe is obſolete; *ſomebody* has too great an appearance of levity.

EXAMPLES.

(948) *One may be little the wiſer for reading this dialogue.* Sidney.
(949) *Theſe ſucceſſes are more glorious which bring benefit to the world, than ſuch ruinous ones as are died in human blood.* Glanville.

EXERCISES.

(950) He is a goodnatured man, and will give as much as a man would deſire. *Stilling fleet.* (951) Men ſeldom ſee a man that is poor much eſteemed. (952) Somebody or other will own it. (953) James i. 27. (954) Eccles. x. 10.

289. When *this* or its plural *theſe* is contraſted with *that* or its plural *thoſe*, *this* or *theſe* refers to the latter, *that* or *thoſe* to the former word, clauſe, or ſentence. *They* is uſed for *thoſe* by Milton.

## EXAMPLES.

(955) *Does the ſon receive a natural life? The ſubject enjoys a civil one: that is but the matter, this the form.* Holyday. (956) *More rain falls in June and July than in December and January; but it makes a much greater ſhew in theſe months than in thoſe becauſe it lies longer.* Woodward, Nat. Hiſt.

(957) *While nature melted, ſuperſtition rav'd!*
*That mourn'd the dead, and this deny'd a grave.* Young.

(958) *Warnings point out our danger; gnomons time:*
*As theſe are uſeleſs when the ſun is ſet,*
*So thoſe but when more glorious reaſon ſhines.* id.

(959) *Neither their ſighs nor tears are true,*
*Thoſe idly blow, theſe idly fall.* Cowley.

(960) *Twilight grey*
*Had in her ſober livery all things clad:*
*Silence accompany'd; for beaſt, and bird,*
*They to their graſſy couch, theſe to their neſts,*
*Were ſtunk.* Milton, P. L. iv. 598.

(961) ——*By thy rod and ſtaff ſupply'd;*
*This my guard and that my guide.* Merrick.

## EXERCISES.

(962) The Engliſh and the French are near neighbours: theſe are iſlanders; theſe inhabit the continent. (963) Cheerfulneſs is preferable to mirth, that may be conſidered as an act, that as a habit of the mind.

(964) His partner's acts without their cauſe appear;
'Twas there a vice, but ſeem'd a madneſs here:
Deteſting this and pitying this he goes,
Loſt and confounded with the various ſhews.

(965) For ſoon the winter of the year
And age life's winter will appear:
At this thy living bloom muſt fade;
As this will ſtrip the verdant ſhade.
(966) Our paſſions and our powers,
Speak the ſame language; call us to the ſkies:
Unripen'd thoſe in this inclement clime
Scarce riſe above conjectures and miſtakes;
And for this land of trifles, thoſe too ſtrong
Tumultuous riſe and tempeſt human life.

290. *Soever* is often parted from *what*, &c. by the ſubſtantive, but never from the pronouns except the poſſeſſive caſes.

## EXAMPLE.

(967) *Every bleſſing we enjoy, by what means ſoever it may be derived upon us, is the gift of Him who is the Great Author of good and Father of mercies.* Addiſon.

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(968) The laſt are indeed more preferable. *Addiſon.* (969) The probableſt means to hinder it. *Locke.* (970) While the extremeſt parts of the earth were meditating a ſubjection. *Atterbury.* (971) The Goths and Vandals of Birmingham have deſtroyed one of the valuableſt philoſophical collections in the world. (972) Is he the orthodoxeſt who cuts the manieſt throats? (973) Every one fancied themſelves threatened by the apparition as ſhe ſtalked about the room, and began to lock their coffers and tie their bags. (974) The gentle reader reſts happy to hear the worthieſt works miſrepreſented, the cleareſt actions obſcured, and the innocenteſt life traduced. *Ben Jonſon.* (975) Thoſe whom they call good bodies——— and the pureſt goodeſt company in the world. *Correſpondent in Spec.* No. 300. (976) He ſometimes denied admiſſion to the chiefeſt officers of the army. *Clarendon.* (977) I bid him chuſe either of the ſix. (978) The mountains and higher parts of the earth grow leſſer and leſſer from age to age. *Burnet.* (979) Mark x. 44. (980) 2 Chron. x. 16. (981) Pſalm lx. 7. (982) Acts xxv. 18. (983) 1 John ii. 10.

(984) A dreadful quiet felt, and, worſer far
Than arms! a ſullen interval of war. *Dryden.*
(985) Theſe kind of knaves, in this plainneſs,
Harbour more craft and more corrupter ends,
Than twenty, ſilky ducking obſervants. *Shakſp.*
(986) The Duke of Milan
And his more braver daughter could control thee. *id.*
(987) Chang'd to a worſer ſhape thou canſt not be. *id.*
(988) In the ſoul,
Are many leſſer faculties that ſerve
Reaſon as chief. *Milton, P. L.* v. 100.
(989) Two other precious drops that ready ſtood
Each in their cryſtal ſluice, he e'er they fell
Kiſs'd as the gracious ſigns of ſweet remorſe
And pious awe, that fear'd to have offended.
*id. ib.* 132.
(990) The puniſhment to other hand belongs. *id. ib.* vi. 807.
(991) They all repair'd both moſt and leaſt. *Spenſer.*
(992) What ſhe wills to ſay or do,
Seems wiſeſt, virtuouſeſt, diſcreeteſt, beſt. *Milton.*

---

(993) Liberty has a formidable enemy on each hand. (994) The great ſtruggle for liberty in this country, ſhould it be unſucceſsful, will probably be the laſt one which ſhe will have for her exiſtence and proſperity. (995) Let every ſound except the mutes be uttered in their ſimple form.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

(996) A walled town is more worthier than a village. *Shakſp.* (997) madam ſays him to the firſt of they you have been Upon The Earth about 50 year what have You been doing There All This While doing ſays She really i Do Not know what me have been doing i deſire i may. Have time given me To recoLleCT after about half a hours paws her told he that her had Been playing at Crimp upon Which rhadamanthus beckoned to the keeper on The left and of him to taik ſhe into cuſtoDy and you madam ſays the juj which look with ſuch an a ſoft hand languaging hair Me think you ſett outt for Theſe place inn yoor nine-and-twentyt. Ear what have you Been Dooing awl theſe while me had an grate deel uv biznis on the hands of me ſays her. (998) Oh! how his worſhip and me did

laugh to ſee the villain. *Macgowen.* (999) That cherubim which now appears as a God to the human ſoul——— *Addiſon.* (1000) There is but one man whom ſhe can have, and that is me. *Richardſon.* (1001) The tongue is like a race-horſe, which runs the faſter the leſſer weight it carries. *Addiſon.* (1002) The bodies which we daily handle make us perceive, that whilſt they remain between them, they do by an inſurmountable force hinder the approach of our hands that preſs them. *Locke, Eſſay, b.* ii. (1003) The violet on the paper will not ſuffer any change thereby. *Newton.* (1004) Matt. viii. 14. (1005) iv. 23. (1006) Iſa. ii. 10.

(1007) So without leaſt impulſe or ſhadow of fate,
Or ought by me immutably foreſeen,
They treſpaſs. *Milton, P. L.* iii. 120.

(1008) Cloſe at mine ear one call'd me forth to walk.
*id. ib.* v. 36.

(1009) Lethe, the river of oblivion rolls
Her watry labyrinth. *id. ib.* ii. 583.

(1010) Give colour to my pale cheek with thy blood,
That we the horrider may ſeem to thoſe
Which chance to find us. *Shakſpere.*

(1011) Once in a ſea-fight with the duke his gallies
I did ſome ſervice. *id.*

(1012) The more ſhame for ye: holy men I thought ye. *id.*

(1013) The queſtion whoſe ſolution I require. *Dryd.*

(1014) Scotland and thee did in each other live. *Dr. Pope.*

(1015) The honeſt citizens who know the value of the privilege will undoubtedly attend to ſecure the man of his choice. (1016) The ordinary of the brethrens churches, his ſhort and peremptory remarks.

## CHAP. XIII.

### Of VERBS.

291. THERE are five *modes*, or manners of uſing Engliſh verbs; the participle, the infinitive mode, the imperative, ſubjunctive, and indicative modes.

## Of the PARTICIPLE.

292. A VERB fitted for the office of an adjective, or made capable of filling up the blank, rule 248, is a *participle*. 1. When the ſubſtantive, with which it is joined, is its ſubject, it is termed the *preſent* or *active* participle, and formed by the addition of *—ing*. 2. When the ſubſtantive is its object, it is termed the *paſt* or *paſſive* participle, and formed, when regular, by the addition of *—ed*; when irregular, according to rule 297. Participles are capable of compariſon, and of becoming adverbs.

EXAMPLES.

(1017) *Wait until ſome trying emergence come.* Blair. (1018) *In order to remove this obſtruction to his riſing graces,—he was favoured with a ſupernatural meſſage from heaven.* id. (1019) *I have lived to ſee — nations panting for liberty, who ſeemed to have loſt the idea of it.* Price. (1020) *Diffuſed knowledge immortalizes itſelf.* Macintoſh. (1021) *The offence given by my Familiar Letters was never forgiven.* Prieſtley, Appeal on the Riots. (1022) *Iſa.* xxi. 15. (1023) *Jer.* ii. 13. (1024) *Acts* xv. 25.

(1025) *She gave his rolling eyes a ſparkling grace.* Dryden.

(1026) *To behold the wandering moon*
*Riding near her higheſt noon.* Milton.

(1027) *O painted monſter form'd mankind to cheat*
*With pleaſing poiſon, and with ſoft deceit.* Pope.

(1028) *A vapour fed from wild deſire,*
*A wandering, ſelf-conſuming fire.* id.

(1029) *Teach infant cheeks a bidden bluſh to know.* id.

(1030) *The trodden worm will turn again,*
*And nature hurt reſent the ſmart;*
*Unleſs thy gentleneſs reſtrain,*
*Unleſs thy love o'ercome my heart.* C. Weſley.

EXERCISES.

(1031) I love to ſee pupils, eager for their taſks, endeavouring to overcome difficulties, and ſcorn to aſk aſſiſtance till it be abſolutely needful. (1032) All arts are peſtered with pretend quacks. (1033) Mr. Fox ſpoke next; a gentleman admire by all parties, applaud and careſs by a conſiderable one. (1034) Theſe are good ſervants; try, faithful, and approve. (1035) A man ſupporting by conſcious integrity needs not fear. (1036) Behold a wretch forſaked by his friends, falled from all his honours, and expoſe to inſult and want. (1037) The vulgar, lead by external ſhow, are not fit guides for the philoſopher. (1038) I could name a nation tore by inteſtine diviſions, hurted by the freſh wounds of an unſucceſsful war, ate up by hungry placemen and holy caterpillars, yet keep alive by its internal ſtrength under the preſſure of theſe calamities. (1039) Pſalm xvii. 1.

(1040) Former things
Are laid aſide like abdicated kings. *Dryden.*

## Of the INFINITIVE MODE.

293. A verb that follows another, the object of another, or an adjective, muſt be in the *infinitive* mode; that is, in its *original ſtate* as found in dictionaries, with the prepoſition *to* before it; as *to walk, to ſtrike, to be.* But the verbs *bid, dare* (to venture) *feel, find, hear, know, let,* (to permit) *make, need, ſee,* have the verb that follows them in the infinitive without the prepoſition: their paſſive participles, however, generally, but not conſtantly, retain it.

EXAMPLES.

(1041) *Whatever profeſſes to benefit by pleaſing, muſt pleaſe at once.* Johnſon, Lives of the Poets. (1042) *Every man, that has undertaken to inſtruct others, can tell what ſlow advances he has been able to make; and how much patience it requires to recal vagrant inattention, to ſtimulate ſluggiſh indifference, and to rectify abſurd miſapprehenſion.* id. ibid. (1043) *Such repreſentations teach us to ſet a juſt value upon our own condition, and make us prize our good*

*fortune.* Add. Spec. No. 418. (1044) *In this manner ſhe drove away ducks, pigs, and chickens: nay, even the inſidious cat was ſeen to ſcamper.* Goldſmith, Eſſay 12. (1045) *When a ſet of men find themſelves agree in any particular*——— Add. Spec. No. 9. (1046) *Every man has, like me, loſt a Euryalus; has known a friend die with happineſs in his graſp.* Adventurer, No. 108. (1047) *Pſalm* xxxvi. 8. (1048) *Rev.* xvii. 3. (1049) *Joſhua* vi. 10. (1050) 1 *Cor.* vi. 1. (1051) *Pſalm* cxix. 10.

(1052) *I need not raiſe*
*Trophies to thee from other men's diſpraiſe.* Denham.

(1053) *Bid thy ceremony give thee cure.* Shakſ.

(1054) *I dare do all that may become a man;*
*Who dares do more is none.* id.

(1055) *And couldſt thou wonder, liberal Burke, to ſee*
*Revenge lead on the ſteps of liberty?*
Merry, Laurel of Liberty.

(1056) *Time I dare thee to diſcover*
*Such a youth and ſuch a lover.* Dryden.

(1057) *Sweet Poetry, thou loveliеſt maid,*
*Still firſt to fly where ſenſual joys invade;*
*Unfit in theſe degenerate times of ſhame*
*To catch the heart or ſtrike for honeſt fame.*
Goldſmith, Deſerted Village.

(1058) *Nor leſs the Spartan fear'd before he found*
*The ſhining barb appear above the wound.*
Pope, Il. iv. 180.

(1059) *He ſaw the nations dead in ſin,*
*And felt his pity work within.* Watts.

(1060) *Thy Hector, wrapt in everlaſting ſleep,*
*Shall neither hear thee ſigh, nor ſee thee weep.* Pope.

EXAMPLES.

(1061) I hate hear a lie. (1062) Earthly enjoyments are apt clog. (1063) I expected my ſon informing you. (1064) You need not to take any notice. (1065) She deſired me reach her a little ſalt upon the point of my knife, which I did in ſuch a trepidation and hurry of obedience that I let it to drop by the way. (1066) Soldiers were ſeen anticipate the baſe employment of the executioner. (1067) He does very little harm; but you never find him to do any good. (1068) You ought not think of her. *Dryden, Spaniſh Friar.*

(1069) Hence reviving warmth is ſeen
Clothe a naked world in green.
(1070) She only lives to help me ruin others,
And laſt to fall herſelf. *Dryden.*

## Of the IMPERATIVE MODE.

294. Aſking to perform or undergo any thing, either by way of command, entreaty, or otherwiſe, is expreſſed by the *imperative* mode. Here the verb in its original ſtate is uſed either alone, or attended by a ſubſtantive generally in the form of an addreſs (rule 257); or, when an emphaſis is required, by a pronoun of the ſecond perſon, in the nominative caſe.

EXAMPLES.

(1071) *Go now, my ſon, to thy repoſe; commit thyſelf to the care of Omnipotence; and when the morning calls again to toil, begin anew thy journey and thy life.* Johnſon, Rambler, No. 65. (1072) *Moſt excellent accompliſhed lady, the heavens rain odours on you.* Shakſpere, Twelfth Night. (1073) 2 *Chron.* xviii. 29. (1074) *Nehemiah* v. 13. (1075) *Pſalm* xx. 1, 2, 3. (1076) xxv. 4. (1077) *Iſa.* xxi. 5. (1078) *Luke* ix. 60.

EXERCISES.

(1079) Suſpect you yourſelf, and ſuſpending your determinations, when the experience of mankind is againſt you. (1080) Pſalm xlviii. 13. (1081) Gen. xxiv. 6. (1082) I cannot run: run thee for the book. (1083) Whatever others do, be ſober.

(1084) Enter each mild, each amicable gueſt,
Receives and wraps me in eternal reſt.
(1085) Begin thou, be thou bold, and venture to be wiſe.

## Of the SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

295. When a thing is conditionally or doubtfully affirmed, after the words *though*, *although*, *if*, *unleſs*, *until*, *whether*, *or*, *except*, *before*, *ere*, *provided*, the compounds of *ſoever*, thoſe that expreſs wiſhing, and *leſt* or *that* denoting a deſign, the *ſubjunctive* mode is employed; that is, the verb is in its original ſtate preceded by its ſubject.

### EXAMPLES.

(1086) *Can he hope to be forgiven if he aim at no improvement, if he purſue no uſeful deſign.* Blair, Sermons, vol. iii. (1087) *Whether they be the opinions of this or the laſt century.* Manning. (1088) *I will forgive him provided he aſk pardon.* (1089) *Gen.* xxvii. 44. (1090) *Levit.* xiv. 36. (1091) xxiii. 29. (1092) *Pſalm* cxxvii. 1. (1093) *Prov.* xxx. 6. (1094) *Eccles.* v. 12. (1095) *Iſa.* i. 18. (1096) *Jer.* xlvii. 6. (1097) *Mat.* iv. 6. (1098) *Mark* xiii. 5. (1099) 1 *Cor.* xv. 36. (1100) 1 *Tim.* vi. 17, 18.

(1101) *O ſtretch thy reign, fair Peace, from ſhore to ſhore,*
*Till conqueſt ceaſe, and ſlavery be no more.*
Pope, Windſor Foreſt.

(1102) *How vain are all theſe glories, all our pains,*
*Unleſs good ſenſe preſerve what beauty gains.*
id. Rape of the Lock.

(1103) *E'en thought meets thought ere from the lips it part.*
id. Eloiſa.

### EXERCISES.

(1104) I will go with him provided he ſetteth out on Monday. (1105) Do not believe a report unleſs it is well atteſted; leſt you are conſtantly befooled. (1106) Prov. xxix. 9. (1107) James i. 26. (1108 ii. 17.

(1109) Whether the darken'd room to muſe invites,
Or whiten'd wall provokes the ſkewer to write.

## Of the INDICATIVE MODE.

296. The *indicative* mode is that manner of uſing the verb by which a thing is fully and poſitively aſſerted. The ſimple indicative (for all modes have compound forms) has the following terminations according to its time and the number and perſon of its ſubject. 1. When a thing is affirmed to be done, or to be in ſome ſtate, &c. at the time of ſpeaking, which is *preſent time*, the ſubject being the firſt perſon of the ſingular, or any perſon of the plural number, the verb muſt be in its original ſtate. 2. The ſecond perſon ſingular takes —*eſt*. 3. In the ſame time when the ſubject is of the third perſon ſingular and the ſtyle ſolemn —*eth* is added; but if the ſtyle be familiar —*s*; and after *ſs*, *x*, *ſh*, *ch* ſoft, and ſingle *o*, —*es*: —*y* after a conſonant becomes —*ies*. 4. When the thing is affirmed to have been done, &c. before the time of ſpeaking it is the *paſt time*: all the perſons with this except the ſecond ſingular add —*ed* to the original ſtate if regular; if irregular the verb is formed as in rule 297. 5. The ſecond perſon ſingular forms this time by the addition of —*ſt* to the ending for the other perſons when regular, and —*eſt* when irregular.—Note, Subſtantives in general are of the third perſon; in the form of an addreſs they are of the ſecond.

297. The following are the irregular verbs, with the connexion of their *three principal parts*, the preſent time, the paſt, and the perfect participle. Thoſe marked thus * are ſometimes regular.

*Theſe verbs may be divided into twelve claſſes.* 1. *Thoſe alike in the principal parts, namely, beat, burſt, caſt, coſt, cut, beat*, bit, hurt, knit, let (to permit), lift*, light*, put, quit*, read, rent, rid, ſet, ſhed, ſhred, ſhut, ſlit, ſplit, ſpread, thruſt, wet*.* 2. *Thoſe*

*alike in the paſt and part. namely, ble-ed, ble-d; bre-ed, fe-ed, fle-e, ha-ve, bear--, le-ad, ſho-e, ſpe-ed:—ben-d, ben-t*, buil-d*, gel-d*, gil-d*, gir-d*, len-d, loſ-e, me-et, ren-d, ſen-d, ſho-ot, ſpen-d, ſwe-at*:—ſ-ell, ſ-old; t-ell:—br-ing, br-ought; beſ-eech, b-uy, ſ-ight,—owe*, ſ-eek, th-ink:—c-atch, c-aught; t-each:—b-ind, b-ound; f-ind, gr-ind, w-ind:—ab-i-de, ab-o-de; w-i-n:—cl-i-ng, cl-u-ng; d-i-g*, ſl-i-ng, h-a-ng*, r-i-ng, ſhr-i-nk, ſ-i-ng, ſ-i-nk, ſl-i-ng, ſl-i-nk, ſp-i-n, ſpr-i-ng, ſt-i-ck, ſt-i-ng, ſt-i-nk, ſtr-i-ng, ſw-i-m, ſw-i-ng, wr-i-ng:—la-y, la-id; pa-y, ſa-y:—clothe, clad*; feel, felt; make, made; work, wrought.* 3. *The principal parts different, part. from pres. by adding —en, forſ-ake, forſ-ook; ſh-ake, t-ake:—ſ-a-ll, ſ-e-ll; h-o-ld:—dr-ive, dr-ove; ſtr-i-ve*, ſhr-i-ve, thr-i-ve, r-i-ſe:—g-i-ve, g-a-ve; ſ-i-t, ſp-i-t:—bid, bade; eat, ate; ſee, ſaw.* 4. *The ſame, adding n, dr-aw, dr-ew; ſl-ay, bl-ow, gr-ow, kn-ow, thr-ow.* 5. *The ſame, doubling the laſt con. adding n, r-i-de, r-o-de; ſtr-i-de, ſm-i-te, wr-i-te.* 6. *Part. from paſt adding —en, ch-u-ſe, ch-o-ſe; cl-ea-ve*, fr-ee-ze, g-e-t, h-ea-ve*, tr-ea-d, w-ea-ve:—br-eak, br-oke; ſp-eak, —bit-e, bit; chid-e, hid-e, ſlid-e:—ſeethe, ſod; ſteal, ſtole; ſtrike, ſtruck.* 7. *The ſame changing e into n, b-ear, bore (but to carry has part. borne), ſh-ear, ſw-ear, t-ear, w-ear.* 8. *Principal parts different without certain analogy, begin, began, begun; do, did, done; drink, drank, drunk or drunken; fly, flew, flown; go, went, gone; lie, lay, lain; am, was, been.* 9. *Paſt regular, h-e-lp, h-o-lpen*; m-e-lt*, ſw-e-ll*:—fold, fold-en*; bake*, grave*, lade, load*, rive*, ſhape*, ſhave*, waſh*, wax*, wreathe, writhe:—hew, hewn; mow*, ſaw*, ſew*, ſhew* or ſhow*, ſow*, ſtraw*, ſtrew* or ſtrow*:—die, dead*.* 10. *Part. reg. aw-a-ke, aw-o-ke*; cl-i-mb*, ſh-i-ne*:—crow, crew; dare (to venture) durſt.* 11. *Part. like pres. c-o-me, c-a-me; r-u-n.* 12. *Such as, not having been mentioned before, end in ch, ck, ff, ll, m or n after the diphthong ea, p, ſe, ſs, ve after ea, x, may take t in the paſt and part. inſtead of ed; but one of the double conſonants muſt be dropt; the ve changed for f; the ea long before l, m or n, pronounced ſhort, and turnd into e before f; and e put for ee before p. So ſnatcht, prickt, puft, dwelt, dreamt (pron. dremt), meant (ment), ſlept, curſt, croſt, left, fixt. Note, Many paſt times in o or u have likewiſe another in a, which is nearly obſolete, but can ſcarce be reckoned improper.*

## EXAMPLES.

(1110) *We overvalue the advantages of fortune, rank and riches, eaſe and ſafety.* Blair, Sermons, vol. iii. (1111) *When you*

*think of the enjoyments you want, think alſo of the troubles from which you are free.* id. ibid. (1112) *If he believe not as thou believeſt, it is a proof thou believeſt not as he believeth, and there is no earthly power can decide between you.* Paine. (1113) *He that loves God is not diſpleaſed at accidents which God chuſes, nor envies at gifts which he beſtows.* Taylor. (1114) *God aſſiſts us in the virtuous conflict.* Blair. (1115) *He leaped up as from ſleep, ſhook himſelf, and ran up and down.* Weſley. (1116) *In a dream of paſſion thou conſenteds to wander through flowery lawns.* Mrs. Wolſtencroft. (1117) *All the boys and girls caught the pleaſing faſhion.* Johnſon. (1118) *Though the petitioner ſwore, ſtampt, and threw down his cards, he has all imaginable reſpect for the ladies and the reſt of the company.* Steele, Spec. No. 429. (1119) *Eccl.* iv. 7. (1120) *Rom.* vii. 22. (1121) *Acts* xxvii. 3. (1122) 1 *Cor.* xv. 11. (1123) *Jer.* vii. 18. (1124) *Job* xiv. 19, 20. (1125) *Neh.* ix. 12, 13, 14, 15. (1126) 20. (1127) 23, 24. (1128) 27, 28, 29. (1129) *Ezra* iv. 1. (1130) x. 5. (1131) *Job* xxxviii. 7. (1132) *Pſalm* xcix. 8. (1133) cvi. 13. (1134) 28. (1135) cxvi. 3. (1136) cxix. 87. (1137) *John* ix. 6. (1138) *Job* xlii. 6.

(1139) *Th' inſulting victor preſſes on the more,*
*And treads the ſteps the vanquiſh'd trod before.* Dryden.

(1140) *Thus others we with defamation wound,*
*While they ſtab us; and ſo the jeſt goes round.* id.

(1141) *He rode to rouſe the prey*
*That ſhaded by the fern in harbour lay.* id.

(1142) *One with a broken truncheon dealt his blows.* id.

(1143) *Some ſtranger power eludes our fickly will;*
*Daſhes our riſing hope with certain ill.* Prior.

(1144) *Now private pity ſtrove with public hate,*
*Reaſon with rage, and eloquence with fate.* Denham.

(1145) *To him no author was unknown,*
*Yet what he wrote was all his own.* id.

## EXERCISES.

(1146) The bounds of ſcience once tranſgreſſed, ignorance begin and error follow. (1147) I followeth reaſon: you believeth romantic ſtories. (1148) They thinken that we taken no care. (1149) You writen well. (1150) We known who that is. (1151) We reverencing our ſuperiors. (1152) I lives at London, and carries on a great trade. (1153) Thou ſurprizeth us all. (1154) Teachers of morality diſcourſen like angels, but lives like men. (1155) Thou, Lord, gives us every good. (1156) Who are thoſe two mortals, of whom the one dos no wrong, the other never erreſt? (1157) I act, at that time, with great caution. (1158) Thou behavedeſt thyſelf in a becoming manner, when thou ranſt to her aſſiſtance. (1159) He ſleept well laſt night. (1160) Acts xviii. 16.

(1161) I ſails aloft through azure ſeas.

(1162) The happy gates of goſpel-grace
Stands open night and day.

(1163) Let none admire
That riches grows in hell; that ſoil may beſt
Deſerve the precious bane.

(1164) In beauty faults conſpicuous grows.

(1165) They pleaſen, are pleas'd; they gi'n to get eſteem,
Till, ſeeming bleſt, they grown to what they ſeem.

(1166) Proud Nimrod firſt the bloody chace begin'd.

(1167) Their golden harps they tak'd;
Harps ever tun'd, that glittering by their ſide,
Like quivers hang'd.

(1168) Great ſouls with generous pity melt,
Which coward tyrants never feel'd.

(1169) The town and village, dome and farm;
Each give each a double charm. *Dyer.*

(1170) Stern rugged nurſe thy rigid lore
With patience many a year ſhe bear'd.

(1171) With them the joyful tidings firſt begun. *Byrom.*

(1172) Be kind
To the dear lovely babe I leave behind.
Some happier maid may take thy Emma's place;
With envious eye thy partial fondneſs ſee,
And hate it for the love thou bore to me. *Shaw.*

298. The relative *who*, *that*, or *which* is of the ſame number and perſon with its antecedent; and where the antecedent is denoted by different perſons, we may chuſe which we pleaſe, but muſt not change them in the ſame connexion.

EXAMPLES.

(1173) *Stories of monarchs ſeldom give me pleaſure, who ſeldom am perſuaded to give credit*———Mrs. Piozzi. (1174) *The joys of diſſipation are like gaudy colours, which, for a moment, attract the ſight, but ſoon fatigue and oppreſs it.* Helen Maria Williams. (1175) *Pſalm* lxxx. 1. (1176) *Epheſians* iii. 8. (1177) *Rev.* i. 18.

(1178) *The man that acts the leaſt upbraids the moſt.* Pope.

(1179) *How will ſhe live when the rich golden ſhaft*
*Hath kill'd the flock of all affections elſe*
*That live in her.* Shakſpere.

EXERCISES.

(1180) Thoſe that loves miſchief are wicked. (1181) I, who ſendeth this intelligence, am ready to atteſt it in perſon. (1182) He who make God his truſt ſhall never be confounded. (1183) O thou, my friend, and the companion of my youth, who accompanied me through the ſhade or ſought me by the murmuring ſtream; to thee I call, but thou canſt not hear——thou who ſleepeth in the ſilent duſt, and remembereſt the affairs of humanity no more. (1184) Had the poor friar died before the diſcovery, it would have paſſed down to poſterity, as one of the greateſt miracles that ever was. *Burnet, Travels.* (1185) Thou art an ingenious man, that getteſt thy money by invention, and expends it in information. (1186) Iſa. xliv. 24.

299. A ſubſtantive of multitude, or denoting many with a ſingular ending, may be conſidered either as ſingular or plural: it is ſingular when the things compoſing it are ſpoken of collectively; plural, when they are conſidered individually or diſtributively. So we ſay, His *congregation increaſes*; and, His *congregation receive* his doctrine.

## EXAMPLES.

(1187) *The parliament conſiſts of two houſes.* (1188) *The parliament debate on matters of great importance.* (1189) *His own ſex allow him ſenſe, and all ours good-breeding.* Spec. No. 401. (1190) *The crowd fills ſeveral ſtreets.*

(1191) *The pious crowd the piles though fallen deplore,*
*And what they fail to raiſe they ſtill adore.* Kenrick.

## EXERCISES.

(1192) The army contain many gentle minds. (1193) The mob differs among themſelves, and ſo does the court. (1194) A ſwarm of bees make a pleaſing ſpectacle. (1195) Prov. xxx. 11, 12.

300. It is by the indicative mode that queſtions are aſked; the verb agreeing with its ſubject in number and perſon, but placed before it.

## EXAMPLES.

(1196) *Rom.* iv. 9. (1197) *Job* xxxix. 13.

(1198) *Whence is the dread of every creature?*
*Fly they our figure or our nature?* Gay.

(1199) *Heard ye the blaſt whoſe ſullen roar*
*Burſt dreadful from the angry ſkies?*
*Saw ye, againſt the craggy ſhore,*
*The waves in wild contention riſe?* Pye.

(1200) *Seeſt thou yon dreary plain, forlorn and wild,*
*The ſeat of deſolation?* Milton, P. L. i. 180.

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(1201) If we hold faſt to that ſcripture concluſion that all mankind riſe from one head. *Burnet.* (1202) We have the means in our hands and nothing but the application of them is wanting. *Addiſon.* (1203) I will cauſe the world believe that I had it from the Almighty. *Macgowan.* (1204) It cannot

but be a delightful ſpectacle, to God and angels, to ſee a young perſon beſieged by powerful temptations on either ſide, to acquit himſelf glorioufly, and reſolutely to hold out againſt the moſt violent aſſaults. *Tillotſon.* (1205) The men begun to embelliſh themſelves. *Addiſon.* (1206) You ned not have done that. (1207) He eat and drank till he found himſelf plethoric. *Johnſon, Lives of P.* (1208) Nobody ſquanders away their time, without hearing and ſeeing daily, how neceſſary it is to employ it well. *Lord Cheſterfield.* (1209) Manners maketh man. *William of Wickham.* (1210) The ruin of Greece was owing to the former. *Swift.* (1211) All the pariſh ſuppoſes Julius to be ſick. *Law.* (1212) Prov. xxiii. 13. (1213) Heb. ix. 13. (1214) Gen. xxxi. 36. (1215) Why prates thou? *Shak.*

(1216) Thou clear'dſt the ſecret of my high deſcent,
And told me what thoſe myſtic tokens meant.
*Arbuthnot.*

(1217) Faultleſs thou dropt from his unerring ſkill. *id.*

(1218) For rhyme in Greece or Rome was never known,
Till by Barbarian deluges o'erflown. *Roſcommon.*

(1219) Repeats you verſes wrote on glaſſes. *Prior.*

(1220) And whereſoe'er thou caſts thy view. *Cowley.*

(1221) What know you not
That, being mechanical, you ought not walk,
Upon a labouring day, without the ſign
Of your profeſſion. *Shakſpere.*

(1222) The organs, though defunct and dead before,
Break up their drowſy grave, and newly move,
With caſted ſlough and freſh celerity. *id. Henry* v.

(1223) I had a feeling ſenſe
Of all your royal favours; but this laſt
Strikes through my heart. *id.*

(1224) Fierce as he mov'd his ſilver ſhafts reſound. *Pope.*

(1225) O thou my voice inſpire
Who touch'd Iſaiah's hallow'd lips with fire. *id.*

(1226) Thou Great Firſt Cauſe, leaſt underſtood,
Who all my ſenſe confin'd
To know but this, that thou art good,
And that myſelf am blind;
Yet gave me, in this dark eſtate,
To ſee the good from ill;
And, binding nature faſt in fate,
Left free the human will. *id.*

(1227) Rapt into future times the bard begun. *id.*

(1228) O thou, ſupreme, high thron'd all height above,
O great, Pelaſgic, Dodonean Jove,
Who 'midſt ſurrounding froſts and vapours chill,
Preſide on bleak Dodona's vocal hill. *id.*

(1229) Words interwove with ſighs found out their way.
*Milton.*

(1230) Though heaven's King
Ride on thy wings; and thou, with thy compeers,
Us'd to the yoke, draw'ſt his triumphal wheels
In progreſs through the road of heaven ſtar-pav'd. *id.*

(1231) But oh 'twas little that her life
O'er earth and waters bears thy fame. *Prior.*

(1232) So much ſhe fears for William's life,
That Mary's fate ſhe dare not mourn. *id.*

(1233) He hears us in the mournful hour,
And helps us bear the heavy load. *Watts.*

(1234) As in ſmooth oil the razor beſt is whet,
So wit is by politeneſs ſharpeſt ſet. *Young.*

(1235) Whoſe ſoul, exalted like a god of wit,
Among the muſes and the graces wait. *Spectator.*

(1236) Nor thou Lord Arthur ſhalt eſcape
To thee I often call'd in vain
Againſt that aſſaſſin in crape;
Yet thou could'ſt tamely ſee me ſlain;
Nor when I felt the dreadful blows,
Or chid the dean or pinch'd thy ſpouſe. *Swift.*

---

(1237) ——After a courſe of attentive obſervation began early in life, and continued near forty years. (1238) As for me, who, as you know, has ſcarce ever taſted happineſs, I ſhall have leſs of it for the time to come.

(1239) Low whiſpers through the half-lit ball-room reign.

(1240) Till thou comes from above.

(1241) Thou form'd our ſouls by thy pure truth.

(1242) Rich are the bleſſings of thy houſe,
With which thou feeds and cheers thy ſpouſe:
Thou keeps her ſafe, and feeds her ſtill,
And leads her to thy heavenly hill.

(1243) Thou made him ſin for us.

(1244) Where dwells the ſacred Three.

(1245) His promiſe is for ever ſure,
His truth from age to age endure.

(1246) We daily ſtrength from theſe derive,
To cauſe our graces ſhine.

(1247) A generation choſe,
A royal prieſthood too.

(1248) So ſaying, and feeling my courage to grow,
I burn to encounter this inſolent foe.

(1249) Why ſleep your ſilver harps' enchanting ſound
And breathe no gales of vocal ſweets around?

(1250) Say, power ſupreme, that o'er my mind preſides.

(1251) Hot at thy heart thou feel'ſt eternal fires,
And in the horror of thy guilt expires!

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

(1252) One man his having many wives by law, ſignifies nothing, unleſs there were many women to one man by nature alſo. *Grant.* (1253) To ſee ſo many to make ſo little conſcience of ſo great a ſin. *Tillotſon.* (1254) Who have we yonder? *Dryden.* (1255) Wits live obſcurely, men know not how; or die obſcurely, men mark not when. *Aſcham.* (1256) It is not ſo decorous, in reſpect of God, that he ſhould immediately do all the meaneſt and triflingeſt things himſelf. *Ray.* (1257) 2 Chron. xxxv. 21. (1258) 1 Sam. ii. 29. (1259) Gen. i. 16. (1260) Deut. xxvi. 3.

(1261) What gain you by forbidding it to teaze ye?
It now can neither trouble ye nor pleaſe ye. *Dryden.*

(1262) And now you'd think, 'twixt you and I,
That things were ripe for a reply. *Moore.*

(1263) The morning opes on high
His univerſal eye. *Smollet.*

(1264) Self-love the ſpring of motion acts the ſoul;
Reaſon's comparing balance rules the whole:
Man but for that no action could attend;
And but for that were active to no end.

---

(1265) Till rapture wakens every dormant lyre,
Till, to the ſons of peace, the world around,
Floats the full choiring, univerſal ſound,

## CHAP. XIV.

### Of Compound Tenses and Auxiliary Verbs.

301. FOR the more accurate expreſſion of ſome particular times, in the ſeveral modes, there are in uſe a number of words commonly called *auxiliary* or helping verbs: thoſe words to which they ſerve as auxiliaries are termed *principal* verbs; and the two when combined form *compound tenſes*. The auxiliaries are *be*, *have*, *do*, *let*, *may*, *can*, *ſhall*, *will*, *muſt*. Their variations, which (except *let*) are ſomething irregular, are as follows: *Be*, Preſ. time, *I am*, *thou art*, *he is*, plur. *are*—Paſt time, *I* and *he was*, *thou waſt*, plur. *were*: It has likewiſe a paſt ſubjunctive, the ſecond perſon ſingular *wert*, the reſt *were*:—*Have*, preſ. *thou haſt*, *he hath*, or *has*, reſt *have*; paſt, *thou hadſt*, reſt *had*:—*Do*, preſ. *thou doeſt* or *doſt*, *he doth* or *does*; paſt, *thou didſt*, reſt *did*:—*Muſt* has no variation:—*May*, *can*, *ſhall*, and *will* have the *conditional* forms *might*, *could*, *ſhould*, and *would*; their ſecond perſons ſingular in the *abſolute* form are *mayeſt*, *canſt*, *ſhalt*, and *wilt*; in the conditional are formed by adding —*eſt* to the other perſons. Five auxiliaries are ſometimes principals, but in a different ſenſe, namely, *be*, to exiſt; *let*, to permit or hinder; *have*, to poſſeſs; *do*, to perform; *will*, to deſire: the laſt is regularly varied in this ſenſe.

302. The preſent and paſt times of the indicative mode are made by the ſame times of the auxiliary *do* with the original ſtate of the primary verb

in the following caſes. 1. When an emphaſis is required. 2. When a queſtion is aſked in familiar language. See rule 300, which applies to the ſolemn ſtyle only. 3. When a thing is denied, as They *do* not *ſee*; but in the ſolemn ſtyle the negative particle is put after the ſimple primary verb, as, They *ſee not*. 4. When any-thing comes between the ſubject and the verb, it is allowable, but not neceſſary. Except in inſtances like theſe, it is obſolete and awkward. The auxiliary *do* may refer to a primary verb to prevent its repetition; yet not to the verbs *have* and *be*, though conſidered as primary ones.

EXAMPLES.

(1266) *Think of the ſhocking reign of the gloomy bigot Philip, and the enormities of his unrelenting general the Duke of Alva.—— I do think of them with horror ſaid the colonel.* Dr. Moore, Zeluco. (1267) *I did dine in town; but I dined in the country too: for you muſt know, my boys, I eat two dinners.* Goldſmith, Eſſay 10. (1268) *Thus did heathen maxims, in the moſt ſpecious and leaſt ſuſpected manner, introduce themſelves into Chriſtianity.* Dr. Prieſtley, Hiſt. of the Chriſt. Church. (1269) *Does he feel an inclination to depreciate, where he dares not openly blame?* Blair, Sermons. (1270) *If we ſee ſome things which we do not approve of, we do not publiſh them.* Weſley. (1271) *If any thing in the world deſerve our ſerious ſtudy and conſideration, thoſe principles of religion do.* Tillotſon. (1272) *They deſtroy the uſe of their natural talents in the ſame manner as covetous men do their quiet and repoſe.* Spect. No. 404. (1273) *They foreſaw not, that the fury of the people, now unreſtrained by any authority, muſt have turned againſt them.* Hume, Hiſt. of Eng. (1274) 2 *Cor.* i. 10. (1275) *Heb.* iv. 10. (1276) vi. 10. (1277) *Job* xxxvii. 15. (1278) *Rev.* ii. 21. (1279) 1 *Sam.* iii. 4, 5. 6.

(1280) *A haughty courtier meeting in the ſtreets*
*A ſcholar, him thus inſolently greets :*
*Baſe men to take the wall I ne'er permit.*
*The ſcholar ſaid, I do ; and gave him it.*
Epigram, Elegant Extracts.

(1281) *Does youth, does beauty read the line ?*
*Does ſympathetic fear their breaſts alarm ?* Maſon.

(1282) *Doſt thou prune thy trembling wing*
*To take thy flight thou know'ſt not whither ?* Prior.

## EXERCISES.

(1283) ——From which innumerable effects do flow. *Hutcheſon.* (1284) If he did this he ſhould find the effects of the love that the bleſſed virgin did bear him. *Burnet, Travels.* (1285) I think you honeſt now, but I thought differently. (1286) Many people ſuſpect that I do not believe the ſcriptures, but I believe them. (1287) I think your name is Mary. Gueſs I right ? No you gueſs not right at all. (1288) You have riches but I do not : you are content but I do not. (1289) Such critics tax not their readers with any thought to underſtand them. (1290) The world will not live, think, or love as I live, think, and love. (1291) 2 Chron. xxxiv. 27. (1292) Rom. viii. 29, 30. (1293) Gal. v. 7.

(1294) Who by reſolves and vows engag'd does ſtand
For days, that yet belong to fate,
Does like an unthrift mortgage his eſtate,
Before it falls into his hand,
The bondman of the cloiſter ſo,
All that he does receive does always owe. *Cowley.*
(1295) He loves not plays,
As thou lov'ſt, Anthony.

303. When it is ſaid that a thing will be done after the time of ſpeaking, the verb is in the *future time*, which is denoted by the auxiliaries *ſhall* or *will* before the verb in its original ſtate ; as, I *will go ;* Thou *ſhalt come.*——In the firſt perſon *will* implies choice ; *ſhall* the mere future happening of the event ; or if *ſhall* imply choice, it

is with a mixture of anger or reluctance. In the other perſons, *ſhall* implies authority or compulſion on the part of the ſpeaker; and in poetical or very ſolemn language, expreſſes that the thing will happen; *will* merely foretels the event, except that in a few caſes, where it ſeems to be very emphatical, it implies the choice of the ſubject.

EXAMPLES.

(1296) *Whoſoever wills the doing of a thing, if the doing of it be in his power, he will certainly do it; and whoſoever does not do that thing which he has in his power to do, does not properly will it.* South. (1297) *I ſhall take care that you do not deceive me in future.* (1298) *The time will come when we ſhall outgrow the reliſh of childiſh amuſements.* Seed. (1299) *Iſaiah* xxii. 4. (1300) *Numbers* xxiv. 17. (1301) xxiii. 12. (1302) 2 *Chron.* xviii. 11. (1303) *Heb.* x. 37, 38.

(1304) *Round the whole earth his dreaded name ſhall ſound.* Cowley.

EXERCISES.

(1305) If I attempt to go over I am afraid I will fall. (1306) Thou ſhalt be ſeven years old to-morrow. (1307) He ſhall leave us, and that ſhall be very diſtreſſing. (1308) I will faint, if I look at ſuch a horrid ſpectacle. (1309) I am diſtreſſed about my friend: he ſhall die very ſoon. (1310) I am reſolved they will appear before a magiſtrate. (1311) You need only give a ſhort account: we will underſtand you. (1312) I will die of this very diſtemper.

304. When an event is repreſented as happening but unfiniſhed, its time is called *imperfect*, and it is denoted by the auxiliary *be* with the participle preſent; when as finiſhed, its time is called *perfect* and denoted by the auxiliary *have* with the participle perfect or paſt; when as taking up ſome ſpace, its time may be called *continued* and is deno-

ted by *have* with the perfect participle of *be* and the preſent of the primary verb, forming a triple compound. There are both preſent, paſt, and future of all theſe kinds denoted by the anſwerable times of their reſpective auxiliaries, the participles remaining unvaried.—Note, All times formed with *be* or *have* have infinitives with the ſame: *do* and *let* have none but as principals: compound tenſes with other auxiliaries have theirs expreſſed by anſwerable phraſes. The phraſe for the future is *to be about to*——

EXAMPLES.

(1313) *The poiſon is beginning to ſpread its infection over his heart.* Blair. (1314) *The ſprightly kid was bounding on the rocks, the ſubtle monkey frolicking in the trees, and the ſolemn elephant repoſing in the ſhade.* Johnſon, Raſſelas. (1315) *To-morrow being Sunday, you will be feeding richly on the word of God.* Mr. Jackſon, Armin. Mag. (1316) *Deſiſt immediately from what thou ſhalt be doing, and mark down that action in thy memory as a tranſgreſſion of the rule of right.* Adventurer. (1317) *The queſtion, I own, ſurprized me, as I had left all things quiet.* Dr. Campbel. (1318) *Jeſus hath attained power to execute and fulfil all the grand promiſes of the goſpel.* Mac Gill, Death of Chriſt. (1319) *When I conſider how much I have ſeen, read, and heard, I begin to blame my own taciturnity.* Ad. Spec. No. 1. (1320) *The gods have placed labour before virtue.* id. (1321) *We have been tugging a great while againſt the ſtream.* id. on the war. (1322) *We ſhall have been working fourteen hours ſhortly.* (1323) *We had been writing long before you came.* (1324) *To be about to live well is the deceitful ſituation of too many.* (1325) *To have laviſhed and to be wanting is a dreadful condition.* (1326) *No perſon ſhall be a ſenator who ſhall not have attained to the age of thirty years.* American Conſtitution. (1327) *Pſ.* lxxxiv. 4. (1328) lxiii. 23. (1329) cxl. 7.

(1330) *Be gracious, Heaven! for now laborious man*
*Has done his part.* Thomſon, Spring, 48.

EXERCISES.

(1331) You told a ſtory when that gentleman entered. (1332) I were juſt think of you. (1333) I tries to read this writing. (1334) He waſt riding to Mancheſter at this time yeſterday. (1335) They will work here at one o'clock. (1336) I is conſidering what you ſaid. (1337) They art conſulting for the good of the country. (1338) They was going into the church as I came paſt. (1339) He hath finiſhed his taſk when I began. (1340) He will have do when you arrive. (1341) They had brought every thing that I left now. (1342) We have began to meet once a week. (1343) His vicious inclinations is continually drawing him one way, while his virtue is make efforts another. (1344) I was ſtudying a long while together when you ſaw me. (1345) I ſhall have be writing an hour preſently.

(1346) One year is paſt—A different ſcene:
No farther mention of the Dean,
Who now, alas! no more is miſt
Than if he never did exiſt. *Swift.*

305. The imperative mode, in every perſon but the ſecond, may be expreſſed by the auxiliary *let* followed by the ſubject of the verb in the objective caſe if a pronoun; the ſubject being followed by the principal verb in its primary ſtate.

EXAMPLES.

(1347) *Let us remember how unworthy we are.* Blair. (1348) *Pſalm* lxviii. 1. (1349) 1 *Cor.* x. 12. (1350) *Eſther* i. 19. (1351) *Pſalm* xix. 14. (1352) *Rom.* xiii. 12. (1353) 1 *Tim.* vi. 1.

(1354) *Let me my own ſad deſtiny relate.* Arm. Mag.

(1355) *O'er golden ſands let rich Pactolus flow.* Pope.

EXERCISES.

(1356) Let we pray. (1357) Endeavour he to diſcharge his duty. (1358) Let they remember juſtice.

306. *May* ſignifies *to have liberty* or *be poſſible*; *can*, *to have power*; *muſt*, *to have obligation* or *neceſſity*. The conditional forms of the firſt two, and of *ſhall* and *will*, are ſometimes uſed as paſt times. They may be employed either way wherever the abſolute forms may, ſubject to the ſame diſcriminating rules. *Should* is uſed both in the preſent, paſt, and future, to denote *moral obligation* or *duty*; *would* in the preſent to expreſs *a wiſh*. *May* alſo denotes *prayer* or *wiſhing*, as, *May* he live long! and in a queſtion ſoftens the boldneſs of it, as, Where *may* you live? A conditional in the firſt member requires a conditional in the other; an abſolute requires an abſolute. The principal after theſe auxiliaries, or the auxiliary after them in triple compound tenſes, ſhould be in its original ſtate. They may all be put for the ſubjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

(1359) *Perpetual levity muſt end in ignorance.* Johnſon. (1360) *He that is ſent out to travel, with the thoughts of a man, deſiring to improve himſelf, may get into the converſation of people of condition.* Locke on Education. (1361) *At that age we ſhould have been either purſuing our ſtudies or with the army.* Mrs. Smith, Celeſtina. (1362) *May you live happily and long for the ſervice of your country.* Dryden. (1363) *When a prince fights juſtly, and yet unproſperouſly, if he could ſee all thoſe reaſons for which God hath ſo ordered it, he would think it the moſt reaſonable thing in the world.* Taylor. (1364) *They know not what they are, nor what they would be, any farther than that they would not be what they are.* L'Eſtrange. (1365) *He is ſtudying the paſſions themſelves, when he ſhould be enquiring into the debates among men which ariſe from them.* Steele, Spec. No. 2. (1366) *John* xi. 40. (1367) *James* i. 4. (1368) *Jude* 17, 18.

(1369) *How old may Phillis be, you aſk,*
*Whoſe beauty thus all hearts engages ?* Prior.

(1370) *Firm they might have ſtood.* Milton.

(1371) *Princes and lords may flouriſh, and may fade;*
*A breath can make them as a breath has made;*
*But a bold peaſantry, their country's pride,*
*When once deſtroy'd, can never be ſupply'd.* Goldſmith.

(1372) *If all the world*
*Should in a pet of temperance feed on pulſe,*
*Drink the clear ſtream, and nothing wear but friz,*
*The All-giver would be unthank'd.* Milton.

(1373) *Thou canſt not bring*
*Back to his mournful heart the morn of ſpring:*
*Thou canſt not bid the roſe of health renew*
*On his deſpairing cheek her crimſon hue.*
Bowles, Verſes to Howard.

EXERCISES.

(1374) If you would diſcovered what you know, we can come to an agreement. (1375) He is ſo ſtrong that he muſt carry near four hundred weight. (1376) I am forced to ſay, you ought to give her ſomething. (1377) I am able to pay ten times as much. (1378) If you will inform me what I owe you, I would to pay you. (1379) Could it be conceived, that we have a regard for poſterity, when ſuch perſons are permitted to take charge of the morals, genius, and health of thoſe dear little pledges. *Goldſmith.* (1380) John vi. 28. (1381) Heb. x. 36.

307. When the ſubſtantive or pronoun, which comes before the verb, is its object, the verb is in a *paſſive* ſtate: this is expreſſed by the auxiliary *be* varied according to the different modes, times, numbers, and perſons, followed by the paſſive participle. The pronoun muſt be in the nominative caſe.

(1382) *Many uſeful hints are obtained by chance.* Johnſon. (1383) *Pſalm* lxxxviii. 12. (1384) *Rev.* iv. 2. (1385) xvi. 20.

(1386) *Without good-breeding, truth is diſapprov'd.* Pope.

EXERCISES.

(1387) You was conquer. (1388) George the third are crown on the twenty-third of September. (1389) The Perſians waſt overcome by Alexander.

308. Verbs that have an object are termed *active:* ſuch as have none are *neuter.* Neuter verbs are varied like the active; but ſuch as ſignify motion or change of condition, and perhaps a few others, change the auxiliary *have* for *be*, when they may be ſaid to be in the *deponent* ſtate.

EXAMPLES.

(1390) *Who are aſcended from the ſucceſsful trade of their anceſtors, into figure and faſhion.* Steele, Spec. No. 428, (1391) *I was now returned in the ſame manner as before.* Tatler. (1392) *Matt.* xii. 9. (1393) *Luke* xv. 27. (1394) *Acts* xvi. 27.

EXERCISES.

(1595) You have comen. (1396) He hath growed amazingly. (1397) When we go the ſun will have riſed. (1398) My neighbour has went. (1399) I am lived now five and twenty years.

309. Where auxiliary verbs are uſed, the thing is denied by putting the negative particle between the auxiliary and its principal, or if there be ſeveral auxiliaries, immediately after the firſt, and a queſtion is aſked by placing the ſubject of the verb in the ſame manner. If a queſtion be aſked in

the negative form, both the ſubject and the particle are placed there; the former is commonly put firſt if a pronoun, and laſt if a ſubſtantive.

## EXAMPLES.

(1400) *Thoſe who will not feel him in his love, will be ſure at length to feel him in his diſpleaſure.* Addiſon. (1401) *The name of God is accompanied with ſuch ideas of greatneſs and reverence, that it ſhould never paſs our lips without ſuggeſting thoſe ideas.* Gilpin. (1402) *Job* ii. 10. (1403) xiii. 11. (1404) xxxvii. 20. (1405) *Pſalm* lv. 22.

## EXERCISES.

(1406) They ſhall go not. (1407) Will not you come? (1408) Are his brethren not living? (1409) Will it be not reckoned a diſgrace to apoſtatize from the cauſe of liberty?

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(1410) They had, from the beginning, began to embrace oppoſite ſyſtems of operation. *Goldſmith.* (1411) The account you was pleaſed to ſend me. *Bentley.* (1412) Diodorus has not miſtook himſelf. *id.* (1413) Whether thou will'ſt pleaſe to reſtore it or not, that thou alone knoweſt. *Atterbury.* (1414) Too ſtrong to be ſhook by his enemies. *id.* (1415) Thoſe kings and potentates who have ſtrove, &c. *Milton.* (1416) Both intereſts, of tyranny and epiſcopacy were incorporate into one, *id.* (1417) I had no ſooner drank, but I found a pimple riſing in my forehead. *Addiſon.* (1418) Mr. Miſſon has wrote, &c. *id.* (1419) He could only command his voice, which was broke with ſighs and ſobbings, ſo far as to bid her proceed. *id.* (1420) If there be but one body of legiſlators, it is no better than a tyranny: if there are only two, there will want a caſting voice. *id.* (1421) Great pains has been taken. *Pope.* (1422) There were two circumſtances which would have made it neceſſary to have loſt no time. *Swift.* (1423) I own this is the natural effect, and, one ſhould hope, ſhould always be the improvement from ſuch calamities. *Sterne.* (1424) As any of theſe three qualifications are moſt conſpicuous and prevailing. *Addiſon.* (1425) All that he did ſuffer for his deliverance ſhould be moſt glorioufly rewarded. *Burnet.*

(1426) Let the circumſtances of life be what or where they will, a man ſhould never neglect improvement. *Watts.* (1427) If Ulyſſes viſits the ſhades, the Aeneas of Virgil and Scipio of Silvius are ſent after him. If he be detained from his return by the allurements of Calypſo, ſo is Aeneas by Dido, and Rinaldo by Armida. *Pope.* (1428) Ezra viii. 22. (1429) ix. 4. (1430) Pſalm iii. 2. (1431) xvii. 3. (1432.) lxxiii. 18. (1433) i. 1. (1434) Jer. xxvi. 19. (1435) Mat. v. 1. (1436) xviii. 12. (1437) Acts ix. 9. (1438) i. 15. (1439) Philip. iii. 10. (1440) Heb. v. 8. (1441) x. 36. (1442) Jude 11.

(1443) And to his faithful ſervant hath in place
Bore witneſs glorioufly. *Milton.*
(1444) Envious darkneſs ere they could return
Had ſtole them from me. *id.*
(1445) He would have ſpoke——— *id.*
(1446) And in triumph had rode—— *id.*
(1447) I have choſe
This perfect man. *id.*
(1448) The fragrant brier was wove between. *Dryden.*
(1449) Then finiſh what you have began,
But ſcribble faſter if you can. *id.*
(1450) No civil broils have ſince his death aroſe. *id.*
(1451) Thou falſe Arcite never ſhall obtain
Thy bad pretence. *id.*
(1452) For ever, in this humble cell,
Let thee and I my fair one dwell. *Prior.*
(1453) Illuſtrious virtues, who by turns have roſe. *id.*
(1454) Friend to my life, which did not you prolong,
The world had wanted many an idle ſong. *Pope.*
(1455) Hence did ſhe go, juſt as ſhe did begin
Sorrow to know, before ſhe knew to ſin.
Death, that does ſin and ſorrow thus prevent,
Is the next bleſſing to a life well ſpent.
(1456) When their temples long have wore
The ſilver crown of treſſes hoar;
As ſtudious ſtill calm peace to keep,
Beneath a flowery turf they ſleep. *Warton.*
(1457) 'Tis pleaſant to believe thy grace,
But we had rather ſee. *Watts.*
(1458) Had but the priſon-walls been ſtrong,
And firm without a flaw,
In darkneſs ſhe had dwelt too long,
And leſs of glory ſaw. *id.*
(1459) Oft have I ſat in ſecret ſighs. *id.*

(1460) Thy kingdom from thy head is rent,
And thy throne royal with diſhonour blent. *Spencer.*
(1461) And though ſhe be but little ſhe is fierce. *Shakſpere.*
(1462) Sure ſome diſaſter has befel. *Gay.*

---

(1463) They often expoſe us to more contempt and miſery from without, than we would ſuffer by the want of them. (1464) ——To be approven of his Judge, and crowned with immortality. (1465) If I have forgot my Saviour's love——

(1466) Thou hath to us reveal'd thy word
By Jeſus from above.
(1467) Sweet are the dainties thou does give.
(1468) Thou like a throttled cur ſhall growl thy laſt.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

(1469) The laws of ſelf-defence undoubtedly juſtify us in deſtroying thoſe animals who would deſtroy us, who injure our properties, or annoy our perſons. *Soame Jenyns.* (1470) If I am rightly informed, you make a regular appearance every quarter-ſeſſions among your brothers of the quorum. *Spec. vol.* viii. *Ded.* (1471) That form of the firſt or primogenial earth which riſe immediately out of Chaos was not the ſame. *Burnet.* (1472) I begun this critical ſeaſon with a caveat to the ladies. *Budgel, Spec. No.* 395. (1473) A king of Scotland, who lives in cloſe friendſhip with England, has few tranſactions to manage with foreign princes. *Hume Hiſt. of Eng.* (1474) It was from the beginning of this book that Virgil has taken that of his tenth Eneid. *Notes in Pope's Hom.* (1475) In birds of the ſame ſhape and proportion, we often ſee the male determined in his courtſhip by the ſingle grain or tincture of a feather, and never diſcovering any charms but in the colour of its ſpecies. *Add. Spec. No.* 412. (1476) It ſhouLD bee noteed thatt preſſing inviteations are not allways ſinceer. (1477) Pſalm cvi. 23. (1478) 1 Sam. ix. 22. (1479) Iſai. vii. 25. (1480) Eſth. iv. 11. (1481) Job v. 11. (1482) vi. 4. (1483) xiv. 3. (1484) xxi. 7. (1485) 15. (1486) xxxi. 7. (1487) Pſalm xxvi. 4. (1488) lv. 12. 13. (1489) lxxviii. 25. (1490) lxxxiv. 10. (1491) lxxxix. 15. (1492) civ. 1—4. (1493) 2 Chron. xxxiv. 27. (1494) John iii. 11. (1495) iv. 9. (1496) vi. 26. (1497) vii. 49. (1498) xi. 44. (1499) Prov. xxx. 11, 12, 13. (1500) 1 Cor. iii. 4. (1501) Gal. iii. 9. (1502) Num. xx. 3.

(1503) What art thou, ſpeak, that on deſigns unknown,
While others ſleep, thus range the camp alone. *Pope.*

(1504) Accept theſe grateful tears, for thee they flow,
For thee that ever felt another's woe. *id.*

(1505) Juſt of thy word, in every thought ſincere,
Who knew no wiſh but what the world might hear *id.*

(1506) A ſecond deluge Learning thus o'er run,
And the monks finiſh'd what the Goths begun. *id.*

(1507) Thus oft by mariners are ſhown
Earl Goodwin's caſtles overflown. *Swift.*

(1508) I by the art of known and feeling ſorrows
Am pregnant to good pity. *Shakſpere.*

(1509) If I do love thee I do love a thing
Which none but fools would wreck. *id.*

(1510) I ſhall be nam'd among the famouſeſt
Of women ſung at ſolemn feſtivals. *Milton.*

(1511) Your change approaches, when all theſe delights
Will vaniſh, and deliver ye to woe. *id.*

(1512) And now thy alms is given,
And thy poor ſtarveling bountifully fed. *Donne.*

(1513) Alas, how vain their fancies be! *Watts.*

(1514) Thomalin, why ſitten we ſo? *Spencer.*

(1515) I knew thou wert not ſlow to hear,
Nor impotent to ſave. *Addiſon.*

---

[1516] Where would we have been at this day if God had availed himſelf of the like argument againſt us? [1517] We truſt, that in carrying theſe reſolutions into execution, we will be ſupported by the corporations and communities of this city.

[1518] Thou has redeem'd us unto God.

[1519] And may it be our whole delight
Loud hallelujahs raiſe.

[1520] Till thou haſt brought the whole.

## CHAP. XV.

### Other RULES relating to VERBS.

310. THE ſecond perſon plural, both of the pronoun and verb, is conſtantly uſed for the ſecond perſon ſingular, except in the higheſt degree of the ſolemn ſtyle and the loweſt of the familiar. However, the nominative when thus changed is *you*, never *ye*.

EXAMPLES.

*(1521) Miſs Emilia, will you be ſo candid as to tell me what behaviour of mine you are pleaſed to puniſh.* Smollet, Peregrine Pickle. *(1522) Sir, If you feel any of that compaſſion, which you recommend to others, you will not diſregard a caſe which I have reaſon from obſervation to believe very common.* Rambler. *(1523) Was worſhip required of thee, doſt thou think, upon his account, that thou mighteſt bring an increaſe to his glory?* Blair. *(1524) Prithee, Trim, quoth my father, what doſt thou mean by honouring thy father and mother?* Sterne. *(1525) My child, though you now think yourſelf mighty happy, becauſe you have hold of my hand; you are now in the hands and under the tender care of a much greater Father and Friend than I am; whoſe tender love to you is far greater than mine; and from whom you receive ſuch bleſſings as no mortal can give.* Law.

EXERCISES.

[1526] Sir, Thou informedſt me in thy obliging letter that thou hadſt heard from thy ſon. (1527] Dear brother, I expected that ye would write to me when ye arrived in Ireland; but ye have delayed ſo long that I have ſent this to enquire after thy ſituation. [1528] You, divine philanthropy, bring cares and ſorrows unknown to the obdurate heart, but you provide an

adequate reward. [1529] To you, O Devotion, we owe the higheſt improvement of our nature, and much of its enjoyment. You are the ſupport of our virtue, and the reſt of onr ſouls in this turbulent world. You compoſe the thoughts. You calm the paſſions. You exalt the heart.

[1530] You alſo made the night,
Maker Omnipotent!

311. The ſimple preſent tenſe is employed, 1. In ſpeaking of the nature or conſtant effects of things: 2. In deſcribing, even after the paſt or future has been uſed relating to the ſame time and ſubject, when the poet or orator wiſhes to impreſs lively ideas of particular ſcenes.

EXAMPLES.

[1531] *Covetouſneſs ſtifles every affection, and deſtroys every tie of blood, or obligation of gratitude.* Dr. Biſſot, Sermons. [1532] *The mind is improved by a repetition of good impreſſions.* Dr. Prieſtley. [1533] *Heb.* i. 11, 12.

[1534] *He ſuck'd the blood and ſovereign balm infus'd,*
*Which Chiron gave and Eſculapius us'd.*
*While round the prince the Greeks employ their care,*
*The Trojans ruſh tumultuous to the war.* Pope, Il. iv. 25[illegible]

[1535] *At midnight, 'tis preſum'd, this pomp will burſt*
*From tenfold darkneſs; ſudden as the ſpark*
*From ſmitten ſteel; from nitrous grain the blaze.*
*Man, ſtarting from his couch, ſhall ſleep no more!*
*The day is broke, which never more ſhall cloſe!*

* * * * *

*Where are we now? Ah me! the ground is gone*
*On which we ſtood.* Young, N. T. Night 9.

312. Both the infinitive mode and the preſent participle are frequently uſed as ſubſtantives, when

they are conſidered as being of the ſingular number, and neuter gender. When the latter is preceded by an article, the ſubſtantive following muſt be preceded by the prepoſition *of*; otherwiſe it ſhould follow the participle immediately, or with ſuch prepoſition as the verb requires in its indicative mode. Both may be put abſolutely or unconnectedly inſtead of the phraſes, *If I muſt*, *If I may*, or, *That I may*——. The participle is ſometimes put in a more familiar, but ſomething coarſer manner, for the infinitive mode, as defined rule 293. The participle and even the adjective may be uſed with a pronoun as well as with a ſubſtantive, but there is ſome difference in the poſition.

## EXAMPLES.

[1536] *To relate all the ill that is true of the beſt man in the world, would probably render him the object of ſuſpicion and diſtruſt.* Adventurer, No. 46. [1537] *There was no going back from this temple through the path of pleaſure which led to it.* Tatler. [1538] *Quibbling is a ſure ſign of an expiring argument.* Warburton. [1539] *The crying down of money is a robbing of thoſe in whoſe hands the money happens to be.* Burnet, Travels. [1540] *This tribe of women are, generally ſpeaking, as much upon the catch as themſelves.* Spec. No. 561. [1541] *He dreaded moving from the ground he ſtood on, for fear of unknown pits and bogs.* Dr. Aikin. [1542] *Iſa.* xxii. 4. [1543] 13. [1544] *Phil.* iii. 1.

[1445] *He, paddling by the ſcuffling crowd,*
*Sees unconcern'd life's wager row'd.* Green.

[1546] *Nor was his ear leſs peal'd*
*With noiſes loud and ruinous (to compare*
*Great things with ſmall) than when Bellona ſtorms.*
Milton, P. L. ii. 920.

EXERCISES.

(1547) If I may uſe a homely proverb, Curſt cows have ſhort horns. (1548) If I muſt be ſincere, I thought her ſcandalized. (1549) In this art as in all others the treating the elements is a dry taſk. (1550) Making of one perſon more than man makes the reſt leſs. (1551) To the finiſhing his courſe let every one direct his eye. (1552) Envy is, if I muſt ſpeak properly, not grounded on the talents of others. (1553) The ſpeaking againſt any one lightly indicate a bad diſpoſition. (1554) To calculate the happineſs of mankind by their ſtations and honours are the moſt deceitful of all rules.

313. A phraſe made up of a participle or adjective connected with a ſubſtantive or pronoun may be abſolute: the pronoun muſt be in the nominative caſe.

EXAMPLES.

(1555) *I being born of my father's firſt wife, and ſhe of his ſecond, ſhe converſes with me rather like a daughter than a ſiſter.* Tatler. (1556) *He firſt placed his affections on Peter de Burgh, and, he becoming obnoxious to the people, the place was ſoon ſupplied by Peter de Roches.* Goldſmith. (1557) *Make a preſent of it to good boys and girls, they paying ſixpence to defray the expence of binding.* Chriſtmas Tales, Title-page. (1558) 2 *Cor.* i. 11. (1559) *Heb.* ii. 4. (1560) *Rom.* ii. 15.

(1561) *The north-eaſt ſpends his rage: he now ſhut up*
*Within his iron cave, th' effuſive ſouth*
*Warms the wide air.* Thomſon, Spring, 141.

(1562) *But he once paſt, ſoon after, when man fell,*
*Strange alteration! Sin and Death, amain,*
*Pav'd after him a broad and beaten way.*
Milton, P. L. ii. 1026.

(1563) *For contemplation he, and valour form'd;*
*For ſoftneſs ſhe, and ſweet attractive grace.*
id. ib. iv. 297.

EXERCISES.

(1564) God is our ſhield: him granting his alſufficient protection, and us truſting in his name, what evil can we feel or fear? (1565) May Britons and Frenchmen be ſoon united in the bonds of friendſhip: we relinquiſhing all ambitious projects, and them freed from the dread of tyranny.

(1566) I will not lag behind, nor err
The way, thee leading.

314. *Quoth* is a defective verb of the paſt time only, uſed with the firſt and third perſons ſingular. *Wis* is an obſolete defective verb, whoſe paſt time and participle perfect are *wiſt*. So is *wot*, *weet* or *wit*, which laſt is uſed in the phraſe *to wit*. *Ought*, though reckoned, on Lowth's authority, to be the paſt time of *owe*, is, in its modern ſenſe, a defective verb, which has only the preſent time of the indicative mode, and is alike with all the perſons but the ſecond ſingular, which adds —*eſt*. *Ail* is never uſed with definite terms but ſuch words as *ſomething*, *nothing*, *what*, &c. It may ſignify either ſuffering or cauſing diſorder. So we ſay, *I* ail ſomething, or, *Something* ails me; but never, I ail *a fever*, or, *A fever* ails me.

EXAMPLES.

(1567) *There is an officer, to wit, the ſheriff of the ſhire*—— Spenſer. (1568) *What can Heraclitus ail?* (1569) *Gen.* xxi. 17. (1570) xliv. 15. (1571) *John* v. 13. (1572) *Eph.* v. 28. (1573) 1 *Tim.* iii. 15.

(1574) *Shall we, quoth he, ſo baſely brook*
*This paltry aſs?* Butler.

(1575) *Well I weet thy cruel wrong*
*Adorns a nobler poet's ſong.* Prior.

(1576) *There are fools alive, I wis,*
*Silver'd o'er, and ſo was this.* Shakſp.

(1577) *He, cutting reaſon's reins,*
*Made them his own before they had it wiſt.* Sidney.

315. *Were* is elegantly uſed for *would be*; *had* for *would have*.

EXAMPLES.

(1578) *A higher compariſon would have tended to leſſen the diſparity between the gods and men, and the juſtneſs of the ſimile had been loſt, as well as the grandeur of the ſentiment.* Notes in Pope's Homer. (1579) *Gen.* xxxiv. 14. (1580) *Pſm.* cxxiv. 3, 4.

(1581) *That were low indeed!*
*That were an ignominy and ſhame beneath*
*This downfal!* Milton, P. i. 114.

(1582) *Hadſt thou alleg'd*
*To thy deſerted hoſt this cauſe of flight,*
*Thou ſurely hadſt not come ſole fugitive.* id. ib. iv. 921.

316. The ſimple paſt time, or the compound tenſe with *did*, is frequently uſed as the ſubjunctive mode. The difference between the real ſubjunctive, the indicative, and this, is—the ſubjunctive leaves the thing entirely doubtful, the indicative affirms it, the paſt time uſed ſubjunctively implies a negative. It likewiſe requires a conditional phraſe in the ſame ſentence, whereas the ſubjunctive will have an abſolute one.

EXAMPLE.

(1583) *His worth if all the nations knew,*
*Sure the whole earth would love him too.* Watts.

317. The verb *to be* has frequently two ſubjects, and may be fitted to the number and perſon of either of them, though it often follows the firſt.

EXAMPLES.

(1584) *The hopes of reward is (or are) the encouragement of virtue.* (1585) *Pſalm* xviii. 11. (1586) *Prov.* xiii. 8.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(1587) God, who didſt teach the hearts of thy faithful people, by the ſending to them the light of thy Holy Spirit. *Com. Prayer.* (1588) Sent to prepare the way of thy Son our Saviour by preaching of repentance. *id.* (1589) Rules for calculating of oblique-angled triangles. *Robertſon, De la Caille.* (1590) Many are the conjectures about the peopling this vaſt continent. *Brooke, Gazetteer.* (1591) O Poverty, ſharp are your ſtings, but you are preferable to an accuſing conſcience or forfeited honour.

(1592) For only in deſtroying I find eaſe
To my relentleſs thoughts; and him deſtroy'd,
Or won to what may work his utter loſs,
For whom all this was made, all this will ſoon
Follow, as to him link'd in weal or woe. *Milton.*

(1593) But what's the loſs of treaſure
To loſing of my dear? *Gay.*

(1594) Now, now, I ſeize, I claſp thy charms,
And now you burſt, ah cruel! from my arms. *Pope.*

## CHAP. XVI.

## Of the remaining PARTS of SPEECH, commonly called PARTICLES.

### Of Prepositions.

318. THE following are the ſignifications of the prepoſitions, referring, however, to dictionaries for critical exactneſs.

319. *Aboard* is a ſailor's term, which ſignifies entering, or beginning to occupy; *above* or *over*, higher; *about*, occupying the boundary; *acroſs* or *traverſe*, having a croſs direction; *adown* or *down*, deſcending; *after*, more backward, or later, reſpecting both time and place; *againſt*, oppoſing; *along*, tending the long way; *amid* or *amidſt*, occupying the middle; *among* or *amongſt*, mixed;

*around* or *round*, deſcribing a circle near the extremities; *at*, occupying the place or time; *athwart*, ſidelong; *before*, being more forward; *behind*, being more backward, reſpecting place only; *below*, *beneath*, *under* or *underneath*, lower; *beſide*, occupying the ſide; *between* or *betwixt*, occupying the ſpace that divides two things; *beyond*, being paſſed; *but*, *except*, or *without*, omitting; *by*, inſtrument, or, more rarely, agent; *for*, cauſe; *from*, origin, frequently leaving or avoiding; *in* or *within*, occupying the ſpace which the extremities bound; *into*, entering; *near* or *nigh*, not diſtant; *notwithſtanding*, not hindering, meaning the thing that follows does not hinder what goes before; *of*, conſequence or belonging; *off*, disjoined; *on* or *upon*, occupying the upper part; *ſince*, later than the event mentioned, and earlier than the time when one ſpeaks; *through*, medium, means; *throughout*, univerſally extended; *till* or *until*, end or period reſpecting time only; *to* or *unto*, end, tendency, or effect; *toward* or *towards*, approaching; *up*, aſcending; *with*, inſtrument, alſo joining; *without*, beſide its ſenſe mentioned with *but*, ſometimes ſignifies paſſed the extremity, beginning the center.

320. Prepoſitions that connect a verb or adjective to a ſubſtantive or pronoun, may ſometimes be diſcovered by the ſenſe, but are frequently regulated by cuſtom. Sometimes the prepoſition alters the ſenſe of the word before it. So we ſay *to abide* a thing, meaning to endure it; to abide *in* or *at* a place, or *with* or *near* a perſon, meaning to dwell; and to abide *by* a perſon, meaning to maintain his cauſe.

321. *In* is uſed before ſtreets, countries, cities and towns near or preſent; *at* before villages, ſingle houſes, and diſtant towns and cities.

EXERCISES.

(1595) I am, to ſome ſenſe, a ſervant with all men. (1596) I reſide at the Hilgate. (1597) That gentleman lives with Bullockſmithy; his uncle is with Paris; his brother with Manchester; his ſons, one with Poland, the other with London. (1598) A guinea is but a ſmall ſum to part between ſixty men. (1599) You live into a ſmall houſe. (1600) I rode from Sheffield till Stockport. (1601) Suppoſe we two divide this among us. (1602) I came down in Cheſhire from my health. (1603) There have been great improvements after the laſt century, and will be ſince this. (1604) Your mind is alienated to all that is good.

## Of Adverbs.

322. Some Adverbs have the three degrees of compariſon. Thoſe that end in *ly* are compared by prefixing *more* and *moſt*. The reſt take the terminations —*er* and —*eſt*, except the following irregular ones; *well, better, beſt; ill, worſe, worſt; much, more, moſt; little, leſs, leaſt.*

EXAMPLES.

(1605) *Nature will always be at variance with reaſon, but will rebel more feebly as ſhe is oftener ſubdued.* Adventurer. (1606) *The ſpirits of animate bodies are all more or leſs kindled.* Bacon.

EXERCISES.

(1607) She ran ſwiftlier than her purſuers. (1608) You read weller than you did. (1609) I ſhall arrive more ſoon than he.

323. Adjectives that end in *ly* muſt not be made into adverbs by the addition of *ly*, but the phraſe *in ſuch a manner* muſt ſupply the place of an adverb. If the ſentence would require ſeveral adverbs, in this caſe, they muſt all be adjectives

joined with *manner*. Inſtead of *meanly and ſillily*, we do not ſay *meanly and in a ſilly manner*, but *in a mean and ſilly manner*.

EXERCISES.

(1610) An orator ſhould ſpeak manlily. (1611) I ſet his danger before him fully and livelily.

324. In ſtrict propriety we ſhould give an affirmative reply to a ſentence containing a negative by *yea*; to one containing no negative by *yes*; and a negative reply to any queſtion, or an aſſertion containing a negative by *no*; to an affirmation by *nay*. Both *yea* and *nay* likewiſe ſignify *not only ſo*.

EXAMPLES.

(1612) *You are not cold. Yea*, or *no*. (1613) *Are you not cold? Yea*, or *no*. (1614) *Are you cold? Yes*, or *no*. (1615) *You are cold. Yes*, or *nay*. (1616) *Rom.* viii. 37. (1617) *Pſm.* cxix. 103.

EXERCISES.

(1618) You have no regard for your character. (1619) Do you never ſtrive to mend? (1620) You do wrong. (1621) Can you repeat thoſe lines? (1622) Do you hear?

## Of Conjunctions.

325. The moſt obvious explanations of the conjunctions, beſide thoſe already given among the prepoſitions, are theſe: *Again*, *alſo*, *and*, *both*, *but* in one ſenſe, *farther*, *moreover*, ſignify add or connect, and may be termed *copulatives*; *although*, *though*, ſignify allowing; *as*, equal; *becauſe*, what follows being the cauſe; *either*, it may be this, *or*, it may be the other, *neither* it may not be this, *nor* it may not be the other; the laſt four may be termed *diſjunctives*. *Elſe* ſignifies omitting what goes before; *ſave*, *unleſs*, omitting what comes after; *however*, *nevertheleſs*, *ſtill*, *yet*, what goes before not hindering; *if*, ſuppoſing; *ſince*, *whereas*,

conſidering; *ſo*, ſimilarly; *than*, compared with; *that*, deſign; *therefore*, *wherefore*, that going before being the cauſe.

326. Theſe following conjunctions have their correſpondent conjunctions; when that in the latter member of the ſentence muſt anſwer to that in the former: to *although* or *though*, *yet* or *nevertheleſs*; *whether* and *either*, *or*; *neither* or *nor*, *nor*; *both*, *and*; *as*, *as*, expreſſing equality or likeneſs with a verb; *ſo*, *as*, likeneſs with a verb, compariſon of quantity with a negative and adjective; *ſo*, *that*, expreſſing a conſequence.

EXAMPLES.

(1623) *Whether by health or ſickneſs, life or death, &c.* South. (1624) *Either reaſon and religion preſcribe rules and ends to all the ordinary actions of our lives, or they do not.* Law. (1625) *Our Engliſh Gardens are not ſo entertaining to the ſight as thoſe of France or Italy.* Addiſon. (1626) 2 *Kings* v, 27. (1627) *Pſm.* cxxi. 4. (1628) ciii. 12. (1629) *Iſai.* lxvi. 13. (1630) x. 22. (1631) 1 *Cor.* i. 2. (1632) *James* ii. 12.

(1633) *Then nor ſtorms*
*Were taught to blow, nor hurricanes to rage.* Thomſon.

(1634) *So frown'd the mighty combatants, that hell*
*Grew darker at their frown.* Milton.

EXERCISES.

(1635) I am neither whig or tory. (1636) He behaved ſo well as he gained the eſteem of all. (1637) It is as heavy than lead.

327. When a conjunction joins a pronoun to other foregoing words, if thoſe words be ſubjects the pronoun muſt be in the nominative caſe; if objects, the pronoun muſt be in the objective. But if a following verb be underſtood, nominative. The ſame rule holds when adverbs occaſionally connect. But the relative will be in the objective after *than* in all connections.

EXAMPLES.

(1638) *Gen.* xxxix. 9. (1639) *Neh.* vi. 11. (1640) *Job* xxxv. 5. (1641) *Pſm.* cxxx. 6. (1642) 1 *Cor.* xv. 10. (1643) 1 *Cor.* iii. 7. (1644) *It was well expreſſed by Plato; but more elegantly by Solomon than him.*

(1645) *Belial came laſt, than whom a ſpirit more lewd*
*Fell not from heaven.* Milton, P. L. i. 490.

(1646) *The glory may be thine*
*Of ending this great war, ſince none but thou*
*Can end it.* id. ib. vi. 702.

(1647) *The peaſant too, a witneſs of his ſong,*
*Himſelf a ſongſter, is as gay as he.* Cowper.

EXERCISES.

(1648) The Jeſuits had more intereſt at court than him. *Smollet.* (1649) They are ten times richer than us. *Weſley.* (1650) It is as fair for my opponet as I. (1651) You can prevail with him ſooner than I, for he loves you better than I. (1652) I have been reading Cicero, than who no writer is more eloquent. (1653) Prov. xxvii. 3.

328. Two or more ſubſtantives or pronouns ſingular, joined by one or more copulative conjunctions, have verbs, ſubſtantives, or pronouns referring to them in the plural: if they be of different perſons, the plural pronouns will be of the ſame as that which is neareſt the firſt.

EXAMPLES.

(1654) *Intemperate zeal, bigotry, and perſecution for any party or opinion, how praiſeworthy ſoever they appear to men of our own principles, produce infinite calamities among mankind, and are highly criminal in their own nature; and yet how many perſons, eminent for piety, ſuffer ſuch monſtrous and abſurd principles to take root in their minds under the colour of virtues.* Ad. Spec. No. 399. (1655) *My Lord Trip, Bill Squaſh the Creolian, and I ſometimes make a party at being ridiculous; and ſo we ſay and do a thouſand things for the joke's ſake.* Goldſmith, Eſſay xi. (1656) *Jer.* viii. 7.

EXERCISES.

(1657) Sloth and luxury ruins its thouſands. (1658) My ſon and I went in, and the people invited them to ſit down. (1659) James iii. 10.

329. Two or more ſubſtantives or pronouns ſingular, joined by one or more disjunctives, have verbs, ſubſtantives, or verbs referring to them ſingular; if they be of different numbers, the referring words agree with the neareſt.

EXAMPLES.

(1660) ——— *When the author repreſents any paſſion, appetite, virtue, or vice under a viſible ſhape, and makes it a perſon or an actor in his poem.* Addiſon. (1661) *Are either the bills, the book, or the caſh in the deſk? Neither the bills, nor the book, nor the caſh is there.* (1662) 1 *Cor.* vii. 15.

(1663) *Thus with the year*
*Seaſons return; but not to me returns*
*Day, or the ſweet approach of even or morn;*
*Or ſight of vernal bloom, or ſummer's roſe.* Milton.

EXERCISES.

(1664) Wit or beauty pleaſe at the firſt view, but prudence, virtue, or piety maintain their conqueſt longer. (1665) Either the underſtanding, or the affections is characteriſtic of human nature.

## Of Interjections.

330. Interjections are ſubject to no rules, except that thoſe of addreſſing take the nominative of the ſecond perſon (r. 272), and thoſe of complaining take the objective of the firſt, as *Ah me! Me miſerable!*

## CHAP. XVII.

### Of Sentences.

331. For the *completion* of ſentences, every one has, at leaſt, one ſubject and one indicative or imperative mode. Every ſubſtantive or pronoun

is either ſubject, object, addreſs, poſſeſſive, or part of a phraſe abſolute. Every ſubject has a verb; every verb, not in the infinitive or participle, a ſubject; every adjective, poſſeſſive or prepoſition, a ſubſtantive or pronoun; every object a verb or prepoſition; every relative an antecedent, in the ſame ſentence, expreſſed or implied.

332. *Ellipſis* is the *implying* or *being underſtood* of ſome word or words in a ſentence; as, Remember you tell him: *that* implied.—Turn to the left: *hand* implied.

EXERCISES to be ſupplied.

(1666) Neh. xii. 38. (1667) Eſth. i. 11. (1668) iii. 11. (1669) Iſa. lxiv. 8. (1670) 2 Cor. x. 18. (1671) 1 Tim. vi. 7.

333. The natural *order* of a ſentence is nearly as follows; Interjections, addreſſing ſubſtantives, indefinite adverbs of order, time, or place, conjunctions, prepoſitions, relatives, interrogatives or indefinites, ſubject, indicative mode, object, infinitive mode, prepoſition, definite adverb of time or place, hypothetical conjunction, ſubject, ſubjunctive mode, object, &c.——Prepoſitions connecting dependent words to the component words of a ſentence precede the former and follow the latter. Adjectives, unleſs they have dependents, precede ſubſtantives; adverbs precede adjectives, and follow verbs: auxiliaries, precede principals.

334. *Tranſpoſition* is forſaking the natural order of ſentences on account of harmony or pathos. As, *Eaſe men all deſire. Wonders this day have I ſeen!*

EXERCISES to be placed naturally.

(1672) Job xx. 18. (1673) Pſalm xlv. 15. (1674) xlviii. 2. (1675) John v. 38. (1676) 1 Cor. xiv. 5.

335. *Change of parts* is a great fault in compoſition, as if one put a verb inſtead of an adverb, as, *happen* for *perhaps*; or a prepoſition for a conjunction, as, *without* I come, inſtead of, *unleſs* I come.

EXERCISES.

(1677) Jer. xlix. 18. (1678) John vii. 8. (1679) 1 Tim. v. 23.*

* It is with regret that the author cloſes this volume, obliged by its ſcanty bounds to defer the execution of the moſt pleaſing part of his taſk; what is commonly treated of as *Grammar*, he has indeed noticed with more fulneſs of rule and example than is any where elſe to be found; but he wiſhed to have led his reader into the ſecrets of compoſition a little farther, and to have illuſtrated in the ſame manner the following ſubjects:—uſe of words, with exerciſes of amending a weak and diffuſe ſtyle by expreſſive terms, changing low, vulgar, obſolete, and improper words, for ſuch as are dignified, pure, current, and appropriate; and exotic words for native:—tautology, ſoleciſm, chiming, crowded and diſproportionate figures, idiomatic phraſes, redundance, ſudden falls, impertinent truiſms, with directions how to avoid theſe faults:—harmony and alliteration their nature, with examples:—variety of expreſſion, and the means to attain it. Theſe and a few ſimilar topics he hopes ſoon to diſcuſs, adding a fuller detail of what has been ſketched in the laſt chapter, and interſperſing the whole with promiſcuous exerciſes on all that has been delivered.

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

*ERRATA.*

*Page* 10, *line* 3 *from bot. for faucenal, read faucenul*—*p.* 13, *l.* 12 *from bot. beginning inſert* 42—*p.* 14, *l.* 14 *from bot. for c or t, read d or t*—*p.* 19, *l.* 12. *for chagreen, read chagrin*—*l.* 14 *from bot. for dentalauee, r. dentelauee*—*p.* 35 *ex* 167 *f. hooair, r. hoair*—*p.* 40, *for* 88, *put* 188—*p.* 41 *ex* 200, *f. Hees, r. Heer*—*p.* 47, *l.* 7, *f. by e, read by c*—*p.* 51, *l.* 14, *for* 1. *r.* 15—*p.* 73, *l.* 4 *from bot. for words, r. parts*—*p.* 81, *l.* 5, *for* cxlxi. *r.* cxlvi.—*p.* 83, *l.* 3, *for four, read five*—*p.* 86, *l.* 3, *del. poverty*—*p.* 89, *correct numbers from* 380 *to* 390.